LANCIA

LANCIA LYBRA

Owner Handbook

Dear Customer,

Congratulations and thank you for choosing LANCIA.
We wrote this handbook to help you get the most out of your car's outstanding qualities.
We advise to read it right through before taking to the road for the first time.
You will find information, tips and important warnings regarding the driving of your car to help you derive the maximum from your LANCIA's technological features. You will discover unique features and details; you will also find essential information for car care and servicing as well as driving and operating safety not to mention the long-term wellbeing of your LANCIA.

The enclosed Warranty Booklet lists the services you have acquired and contains details relating to the following:

- the Warranty Certificate, with terms and conditions for maintaining it
- the range of services offered to LANCIA owners.

We are sure that these instruments will help you easily attune to and appreciate both your new car and the LANCIA team that will be on hand to provide you with any help you may require.

Best regards and have a great trip.

MUST BE READ!

REFUELLING

Petrol engines: only refuel with unleaded petrol with octane rating (RON) no less than 95.

Diesel engines: only refuel with diesel fuel conforming to the European specification EN590.

ENGINE START-UP

Make sure the handbrake is pulled up; put the gear lever into neutral; press the clutch pedal down to the floor without touching the accelerator; then:

petrol engines: turn the ignition key to **AVV** and release it as soon as the engine starts.

diesel engines: turn the ignition key to **MAR** and wait for the instrument panel warning lights CODE and to go out, then turn the ignition key to **AVV** and release it as soon as the engine starts.

PARKING OVER INFLAMMABLE MATERIAL

When functioning normally, the catalytic converter reaches high temperatures. For this reason do not park the car over inflammable material, grass, dry leaves, pine needles, etc.: fire hazard.

PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

A system for continuously monitoring emission system components to ensure greater environmental protection is fitted in your car.

ELECTRICAL ACCESSORIES

If, after buying the car, you decide to add electrical accessories (that will gradually drain the battery), visit a **Lancia Dealership**. They can calculate the overall electrical requirement and check that the car's electric system can support the required load.

CODE card

Keep the code card in a safe place, not in the car. You should always keep the electronic code written on the CODE card with you in case you need to carry out an emergency start-up procedure.

SCHEDULED SERVICING

Correct maintenance of the car is essential for ensuring it stays in tip-top condition and safeguards its safety features, its environmental friendliness and low running costs for a long time to come.

THE OWNER HANDBOOK CONTAINS ...

... information, tips and important warnings regarding the safe, correct driving of your car, and its maintenance. Pay particular attention to the symbols ⚠ (personal safety) ⚠ (environmental protection) ⚠ (the car's wellbeing).

TRAVELLING SAFELY AND IN HARMONY WITH NATURE

Safety and respect for the environment are the guidelines that inspired the Lybra's design from the drawing board onwards.

This concept has meant that the Lybra has been able to face and pass the strictest safety tests. So much so that, from this point of view, the car is the best in its class and has probably already incorporated features that belong to the future.

In addition, ongoing research into new and effective features to help safeguard the environment makes the Lybra and car to imitate for this reason as well.

All versions are in fact equipped with environmental protection devices that reduce harmful exhaust fumes in compliance with the limits provided for by current legislation.

What is more, every single component of the Lybra is fully recyclable. At the end of your car's lifespan any LANCIA dealership would be please to make arrangements for your car to be recycled. Nature benefits in two ways: there is no pollution for waste disposal and the demand for raw materials is reduced.

Nature benefits in two ways: there is no pollution for waste disposal and the demand for raw materials is reduced.

SAFEGUARDING THE ENVIRONMENT

Safeguarding the environment has directed the design and manufacturing of the Lybra right from the start. The result is the use of materials and the perfection of devices that can reduce or sweepingly reduce harmful influences on the environment.

The Lybra, equipped with environment safeguarding devices which curtail harmful exhaust gas emissions, is ready to travel well ahead of the most stringent international pollution control standards.

USE OF ENVIRONMENT-FRIENDLY MATERIALS

None of the car's components contain asbestos. Padding and the climate control system do not contain CFC (chlorofluorocarbides) - the gases considered responsible for the destruction of the ozone layer. Other substances that might pollute air and water tables, such as the cadmium in the rust-proof coating of the bolts and the chromates in some paints, have been completely replaced with substances that do not harm the environment.

DEVICES FOR REDUCING PETROL ENGINE EMISSIONS

Three-way catalytic converter (catalytic exhaust pipe)

Carbon monoxide, nitrogen oxides and unburned hydrocarbons are the main harmful components in exhaust gasses.

The catalytic converter is a "miniature laboratory" where a very high percentage of these components are converted into harmless substances.

This conversion is aided by minute particles of precious metals on the ceramic core enclosed in a stainless steel container.

Lambda sensor

All petrol versions are fitted with this device. It ensures that air and fuel are constantly mixed in the correct proportion. This is a fundamental condition for proper engine and catalytic converter operation.

Fuel evaporation canister

As it is impossible to stop the build up of petrol fumes, also when the engine is not running, the system traps them in a special container holding active carbon. The fumes are sucked in from here and burnt while the engine is running.

DEVICES FOR REDUCING DIESEL ENGINE EMISSIONS

Oxidising catalytic converter

This device converts the pollution substances in the exhaust gas (carbon monoxide, unburned hydrocarbons and particulate) into harmless substances, thus reducing the smokiness and smell associated with diesel engine exhaust fumes.

The catalytic converter consists of a stainless steel case containing a honeycomb ceramic core in which there is precious metal which carries out the catalysing action.

Exhaust Gas Recirculation (E.G.R. Cooled) system

This system recirculates or reuses part of the exhaust gas in a proportion which varies according to engine operation conditions.

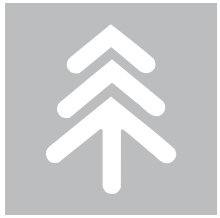
When necessary, it is used for the control of nitrogen oxide emissions.

THE SIGNS TO HELP YOU DRIVE CORRECTLY

The signs you see on this page are very important. They highlight those parts of the handbook where, more than elsewhere, you should stop for a minute and read carefully.

As you can see, each sign has a different symbol to make it immediately clear and easy to identify the subjects in the different areas:

Personal safety.
Important. Total or partial failure to follow these instructions can place driver, passengers or others in serious danger.



Environmental protection.
This shows you the correct procedures to follow to ensure that the car does not harm the environment.

Car wellbeing.
Important. Total or partial failure to follow these instructions will result in the risk of serious damage to the car and may invalidate the warranty as well.

SYMBOLS

Special coloured labels have been attached near or actually on some of the components of your Lybra. These labels bear symbols that remind you of the precautions to be taken as regards that particular component.

A list of the symbols to be found on your Lybra is given below with the name of the component to which it relates at the side of it.

These symbols are divided into the following four categories: danger, prohibition, warning and obligation.

DANGER SYMBOLS

Battery

Corrosive fluid.

Battery

Explosion.

Fan

May cut in automatically even when the engine is turned off.

Expansion tank

Do not remove the cap when the coolant is hot.

Coil

High voltage.

Belts and pulleys

Moving parts: keep parts of the body and clothes away.

Climate control tubing

Do not open. Gas under high pressure.

PROHIBITION SYMBOLS

Battery

Keep away from naked flames.

Battery

Keep away from children.

Heat shields - belts - pulleys - fan

Do not touch.

WARNING SYMBOLS

Catalytic converter

Do not park over inflammable materials. See Chapter: “Protecting the emission control devices”.

Power steering

Do not exceed the maximum fluid level in the reservoir. Use only the fluid specified in the section “Capacities”.

Brake circuit

Do not exceed the maximum fluid level in the reservoir. Use only the fluid specified in the section “Capacities”.

Windscreen wiper

Only use fluid of the type specified in the section “Capacities”.

Engine

Use only the oil specified in the section “Capacities”.

Unleaded petrol vehicle

Use only unleaded petrol with a rated octane number (RON) of 95.

OBLIGATION SYMBOLS

Diesel engines

Use diesel fuel only.

Battery

Protect your eyes.

Expansion tank

Only use fluid of the type specified in the section “Capacities”.

Battery

Jack

See the Owner handbook.

CONTENTS

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

You are recommended to read this chapter sitting comfortably in your new Lybra. In this way you will be able to identify the parts described immediate and see for yourself what you have just read.

In short, you will increase your knowledge of your Lybra with its controls and other devices. Later, when you start the engine and join the traffic you will make a host of other pleasant discoveries.

DASHBOARD

The presence and the position of the instruments and warning lights may vary according to the version.

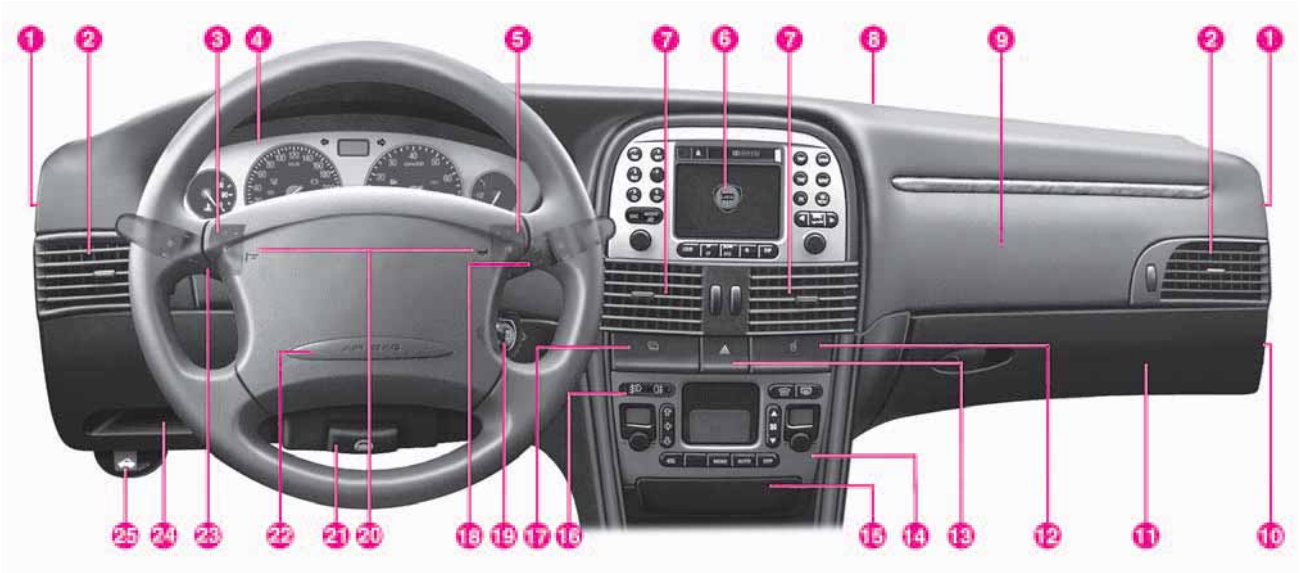


fig. 1

P4T0806

1) Side window vents - **2**) Side vents - **3**) Headlight slant adjuster - **4**) Instrument panel - **5**) Instrument panel dimmer - **6**) ICS multifunctional display: sound system, clock, trip computer and check control - **7**) Central vents - **8**) Windscreen vent - **9**) Passenger's airbag (where fitted) - **10**) Passenger's airbag deactivation switch - **11**) Glove compartment - **12**) Cup/can holder - **13**) Hazard light switch - **14**) Automatic climate control and heated rear window switch - **15**) Ashtray and cigar lighter - **16**) Front and rear fog light switch - **17**) Card pocket - **18**) Windscreen wiper/washer stalk - **19**) Ignition switch - **20**) Horn - **21**) Steering wheel height adjustment lever - **22**) Driver's airbag - **23**) Outside light control stalk - **24**) Glove compartment/fusebox cover - **25**) Bonnet opening lever.

IGNITION SWITCH

The key can be turned to four positions (**fig. 2**).

STOP: engine off, key can be removed, steering column locked. Some electrical devices can be worked (e.g. sound system).

MAR: driving position. All electrical devices can be worked.

AVV: engine ignition.

PARK: engine off, parking lights on, key can be removed, steering column locked. To turn the key to **PARK**, press button **A**.

If the ignition switch has been tampered with (e.g. someone has tried to steal your car), get a Lancia Dealership to make sure it is still functioning properly before you start driving again.

Always remove the ignition key when you get out of the car. This will prevent anyone from accidentally working the controls. Remember to apply the handbrake and, if the car is faced down on a steep slope engage the first gear. If it is facing up, engage the reverse gear.

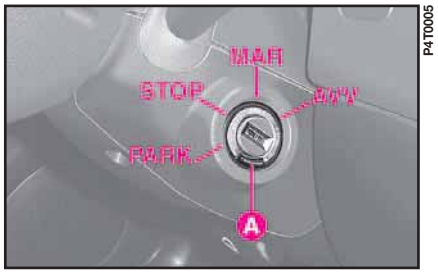


fig. 2

STEERING COLUMN LOCK

To engage the lock: remove the ignition key at **STOP** or **PARK** and turn the steering wheel until it locks.

To release the lock: rock the steering wheel slightly as you turn the ignition key to **MAR.**

It is absolutely forbidden to carry out whatever after-market operation involving steering system or steering column modifications (e.g.: installation of anti-theft device) that could badly affect performance and safety, cause the lapse of warranty and also result in non-compliance of the car with homologation requirements.

Never remove the ignition key while the car is moving. The steering wheel would automatically lock as soon as you try to turn it. This also applies when the car is being towed.

THE LANCIA CODE SYSTEM

To further protect your car from theft, it has been fitted with an engine immobilising system (Lancia CODE) which is automatically activated when the ignition key is removed. An electronic device, in fact, is fitted in each ignition key grip. The device transmits a radio-frequency signal when the engine is started through a special aerial built into the ignition switch. The modulated signal is a password. Only if the control unit recognises the key can the engine be started.

KEYS

Together with the car are delivered:

– **2** keys **A** (**fig. 3**) with incorporated remote control if the car is fitted with an electronic alarm;

– **1** key with incorporate remote control plus **1** mechanical type key if the car is not fitted with an electronic alarm.

In order to ensure the greatest efficiency of electronic devices incorporated in the key, it is recommended that the latter should not be exposed to direct sunlight and/or heavy shocks.

The CODE card (**fig. 4**) is also supplied with the keys and bears the following:

A - The electronic code, to be used for emergency starting.

B - The mechanical key code to be given to the **Lancia Dealership** when ordering duplicate keys.

C and **D** - The spaces for electronic alarm remote control stickers.

The code numbers written on the CODE card must be kept in a safe place (not in the car).

You should always have the electronic code number written on the CODE card with you at all times in case you need to perform an emergency start-up.

fig. 3

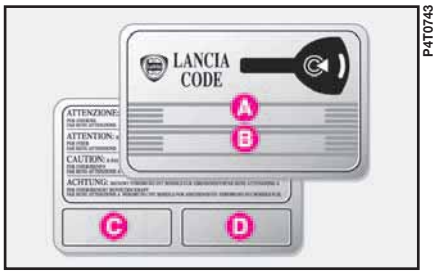


fig. 4

All the keys and the CODE card must be handed over the new owner when selling the car.

The key (**fig. 5**) is provided with:

– a metal insert **A** that can be locked up in the key handle by pressing button **B**;

– button **B**, used to snap-open the metal insert;

– button **C**, to operate the central door locking system, to switch the electronic alarm off (where fitted) and to unlock the fuel filler cap;

– button **D**, to operate the central door locking system, boot/tailgate locking, to switch the electronic alarm on (where fitted) and to lock the fuel filler cap;

– button **E**, to open the boot/tailgate when the alarm is on;

– led **F**, which indicates the remote control operation and the internal battery status.

Pressing down (for more than 2 seconds) button C will open all door windows to aerate the passenger compartment: window opening is interrupted when the button is released.

Similarly, door windows can be completely closed when closing the doors by pressing down (for more than 2 seconds) button **D**.

Window closing is stopped when releasing button **D**.

IMPORTANT Anomalous glass operation (glasses sliding up or down jerkily) may indicate a loss of calibration of the anti-crushing safety device. In this case, the system should be reinitialised as described in chapter "Electric window winders" in the Owner Handbook, to which this Supplement is attached to.

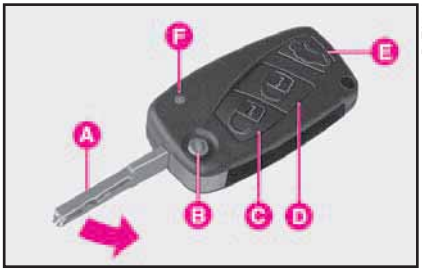
The metal insert **A** (**fig. 6**) of the key operates:

– the ignition switch;

– the steering column lock disengagement;

– the driver's door lock;

– the boot lock;



P4T0744

fig. 5

P4T0745

fig. 6

– the passenger's side air bag deactivating switch;

– the glove compartment lock (where fitted).

To remove the metal insert from the key grip, press button **B**.

When pressing button B (fig. 6), take care to prevent the metal insert A from causing harm or damage when it comes out. The button B should only be pressed when the key is away from the body, in particular from the eyes, and from objects that can be spoilt (e.g. clothes). Make sure the key can never be touched by others, especially children, who may inadvertently press the button B.

To insert the metal insert **A** (**fig. 5**) into the key grip, keep the button **B** pressed and turn the insert in the direction shown by the arrow until hearing the locking click. Then release button **B**.

OPERATION

Each time the ignition key is removed from position **STOP**, or **PARK**, the Lancia CODE system will deactivate the engine electronic control unit functions.

When the key is turned to **MAR** to start the engine, the Lancia CODE system sends a password code to the engine control unit to deactivate the function lock. The encoded and variable code, randomly selected from over four billion possible combinations, is only sent if, in turn, the system has recognised the code transmitted by the electronic device built into the ignition key via an aerial surrounding the ignition switch.

1) If the code is recognised, the CODE warning light on the instrument panel will flash briefly: this means that the protection system has recognised the key code and disabled the engine immobilising system; turn the key to **AVV**, to start.

2) If the CODE warning light stays on (with warning light) the code was not recognised. In this case, turn the key to **STOP** and then back to **MAR**. If the engine remains immobilised, try with the other keys provided.

If you are still unable to start the engine, carry out the emergency starting procedure and contact your **Lancia Dealership**.

When the car is travelling and the key is at **MAR**:

1) If the CODE warning light comes on while the car is moving, this means that the system is running a self-test (e.g. due to a voltage drop). The first time you stop, you can test the system as follows: switch off the engine by turning the ignition key to **STOP** then turn the key back to **MAR**: the warning light CODE should come on and then go out in about one second. If the warning light fails to go out, leave the key at **STOP** for longer than 30 seconds. If the problem persists, contact a **Lancia Dealership**.

2) If the warning light CODE flashes, the car is not protected by the engine immobilising system. Contact a **Lancia Dealership** immediately and get them to store the codes of all the keys in the memory.

If the Lancia CODE warning light flashes at half a second frequency after approximately two seconds from when the key is turned to MAR, the key code has not be stored in the system's memory and consequently the car is not protected by the Lancia CODE system against theft. In this case, go to a Lancia Dealership to have the key codes stored.

IMPORTANT The code may not be completely transmitted if the key is turned very rapidly from STOP to AVV. This will prevent the engine from starting. Try again turning the key slower.

DUPLICATE KEYS

When you ask for extra keys, remember that all the keys, both the new ones and those you already possess, must be stored in the memory (up to a maximum of seven keys). Go directly to your **Lancia Dealership**, taking with you all the keys in your possession, the CODE card, personal ID and the car's ownership papers. Copies of the CODE card can be ordered from your **Lancia Dealership**.

IMPORTANT The codes of any keys that are not available when the new storage procedure is carried out will be deleted from the memory to prevent any lost or stolen keys being used to start the engine.

REPLACING THE BATTERIES

Replace the batteries with equivalent batteries which can be purchased at common stores, if the key led **F** flashes briefly once and led **L** (**Fig. 12**) in front of the steering wheel stays on with fixed light for approximately two minutes (after switching the alarm off), when button (**C**, **D** or **E fig. 5**) is pressed.

Used batteries pollute the environment. Dispose of them in the special containers, as specified by current legislation or take them to a Lancia Dealership, which will deal with their disposal.

Replace the batteries as follows:

– press button **B** (**fig. 7**) and bring the metal insert **A** to the open position;

– by means of a fine tip screwdriver, turn the opening device **G** to 🔓 and remove the battery holder **H**;

– replace the battery **I** observing the proper bias;

– refit the battery holder into the key and secure it, by turning the device **G** to 🔒.

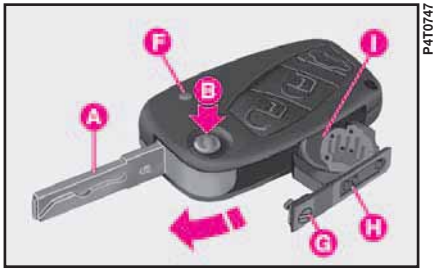


fig. 7

ELECTRONIC ALARM (where fitted)

The electronic alarm system fitted in the car complies with EC directive 95/56 and consists of:

– a radio-frequency transmitter (built into the ignition key);

– a radio-frequency receiver;

– an electronic control unit with built-in siren;

– volumetric sensors which can be deactivated (built-into the front ceiling lamp);

– an anti-lifting sensor;

– a bonnet opening switch;

– boot/tailgate opening switch;

– door opening switches;

– warning LEDs.

The electronic alarm is controlled by the receiver and is switched on by pressing button **D** (**fig. 8**) and switched off by pressing button **C**. Both buttons are built-into the ignition key, which sends the secret and variable code.

The electronic alarm - which additionally operates the central door locking system - protects from the following actions:

– illicit opening of doors, bonnet and boot (perimetral surveillance);

– ignition switch operation;

– moving bodies in the passenger compartment (volumetric surveillance);

– attempts to lift the car;

– cutting of battery cables.

The volumetric surveillance function can be deactivated, as required. Follow the instructions given below.

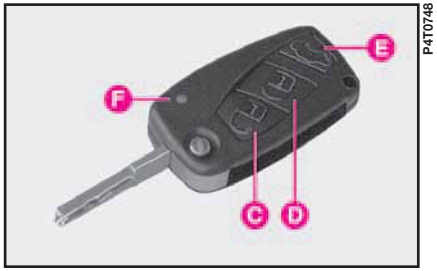


fig. 8

IMPORTANT The engine immobilising system is governed by the Lancia CODE system and is automatically activated when the ignition key is removed.

REMOTE CONTROL (fig. 8)

The remote control is built into the ignition key and is equipped with:

– button **D** for switching the alarm on;

– button **C** for switching the alarm off;

– button **E** for opening the boot with the alarm on;

– LED **F**.

The buttons operate the control and the LED flashes while the transmitter is sending the code to the receiver.

This code (of the "rolling code" type) is encoded by means of a specific algorithm and consequently changes at each transmission.

The radio-frequency remote control allows to operate the alarm system also from a certain distance (up to approximately 10 metres from the car), without the need of being addressed towards the receiver and also if the windows are dirty.

IMPORTANT Change the remote control batteries as soon as possible if LED **F** flashes briefly only once when button **D** is pressed. The LED will work normally after button **D** is pressed for the second time after replacing the batteries.

SWITCHING THE ALARM ON

The alarm can only be switched on with the ignition key at **STOP**, **PARK** or removed.

To switch the alarm on, press and release button **D** (**fig. 8**) on the ignition key.

With the exception of certain markets, a beep will be heard, the direction indicators will light up for approximately three seconds, the doors will be locked and LED **L** (**fig. 9**) in front of the steering wheel will start flashing.

fig. 9

A self-test is run when the alarm is switched on. The test is signaled by LED **L** which flashes as follows:

– four flashes in one second: no faults found;

– eight flashes in one second: door/bonnet/boot open or faulty sensor;

– fixed light: faulty volumetric or anti-lift sensor.

If a fault is found, the concerned component is cut out and the system beeps to signal the event.

Surveillance

LED **L** (**fig. 9**) will flash to indicate that the system surveillance function is on.

The LED will flash as long as the system is operating.

IMPORTANT The electronic alarm operation is adapted to the rules in force in the various countries.

Self-test
and door/bonnet/boot checks

Check that the doors, bonnet and boot are correctly closed if a second beep is heard when the alarm is switched on. Then try to switch the alarm back on.

The system will cut out the doors, bonnet and boot from the surveillance if they are not properly closed.

If the doors, the bonnet and the boot are properly closed and the second beep is heard again, it means that the system self-test function has found a fault. Contact a **Lancia Dealership**.

SWITCHING ON THE ALARM AND CUTTING OUT THE VOLUMETRIC SURVEILLANCE

The function can be cut out (for example, when pets are left in the car) by carrying out the following operations in rapid sequence. With the key at **MAR**, turn the key to **STOP**, then back to **MAR** and then back to **STOP** again. Remove the ignition key. The LED in front of the steering wheel will light up for approximately two seconds to indicate the function has been cut out.

To restore the volumetric surveillance function, take the key to **MAR** and hold it there for longer than 30 seconds.

If you want to operate an electrical device which runs when the key is at **MAR** (e.g. the electrical window winders) when the volumetric surveillance function is cut out, turn the key to **MAR**, operate the required control and turn the key back to **STOP** within 30 seconds. In this way the the volumetric surveillance function will not be switched on again.

AUTOMATIC SWITCH-ON
(where fitted)

In some markets, the electronic alarm can be programmed to be switched on automatically.

The electronic alarm is automatically switched on (without operating the door locking system) after approximately 30 seconds from when the car is left. This condition is detected by the system by the following sequence of actions:

– ignition key turned from **MAR** to **STOP**;

– opening and closing of the last door.

The automatic switch-on will be interrupted if a door, the bonnet or the boot is opened during the 30 second timeout. The 30 seconds timeout will start from zero after closure.

Press button **C** (**fig. 8**) on the ignition key to switch the alarm off after an automatic switch-on.

SWITCHING THE ALARM OFF

To switch the alarm off, press remote control button **C** (**fig. 8**). Then, the system performs the following actions (with the exception of certain markets):

– the direction indicators will flash twice;

– two short siren sound signals ("BEEP");

– the system will unlock the doors.

IMPORTANT If LED in the car stays on (for up to two minutes or until the ignition key is turned to **MAR**) when the alarm is switched off:

– If the LED stays on (fixed light) the remote control batteries are flat. Replace them.

– If the LED flashes differently from usual, an attempt has been made to break into the car. The type of break-in attempt is signalled by the number of flashes:

1 flash: front right-hand door

2 flashes: front left-hand door

3 flashes: rear right-hand door

4 flashes: rear left-hand door

5 flashes: volumetric or anti-lifting sensors

6 flashes: bonnet

7 flashes: boot/tailgate

8 flashes: tampered wires to start engine

9 flashes: tampered battery wires

10 flashes: three or more causes of alarm.

VOLUMETRIC PROTECTION

Do not leave passengers or pets in the parked car and completely close the windows and the sunroof (where fitted) to ensure the correct operation of the volumetric sensors. Furthermore, make sure that the doors, bonnet and boot/tailgate are properly closed.

ANTI-LIFTING SENSOR

The anti-lifting sensor detects variations in slant to signal lifting or partial lifting (e.g. to remove a wheel) of the car.

The sensor can detect minimal variations in car trim along both longitudinal axis and transversal axis. variations in trim lower than 0.5°/min. (such as, for example, a slow deflating tyre) are not taken into account.

OPENING THE BOOT WHEN THE ALARM IS ON

When the alarm is on, the boot can be opened by pressing button **E** (**fig. 8**) on the ignition key.

In this case, the operating logic of the alarm is as follows:

– the volumetric surveillance function is deactivated;

– the anti-lift sensor is deactivated;

– the boot/tailgate sensor is deactivated.

The normal surveillance functions are reactivated when the boot/tailgate is closed.

WHAT TRIGGERS THE ALARM OFF

The alarm will be triggered off in the following conditions:

– if a door, the bonnet or the boot/tailgate is opened;

– if the battery or the cables are disconnected or cut;

– if there is an intrusion in the passenger compartment, e.g. a broken window (volumetric protection).

– if an attempt is made to start the engine (key at **MAR**);

– if an attempt has been made to lift the car.

According to the markets, the alarm can operate the siren (for up to three 26 second cycles) and the direction indicators (for approximately four or five minutes, only where this is allowed). The intervention modality and the number of cycles can vary according to the markets.

A maximum number of acoustic/visual cycles is foreseen in all cases.

After the alarm cycle, the system returns to its normal surveillance function.

STOPPING THE ALARM

To stop the alarm, press button **C** (**fig. 8**) on the remote control. If this is unsuccessful, owing to run-down remote control battery or to a system fault, open the door after unlocking the lock with the key, then put the key into the ignition switch and turn it to **MAR**.

To switch the alarm on again, turn the key to **STOP** and remove it, then press button **D** on the remote control after closing the doors. If the alarm is not switched on and LED **F** on the remote control gives off only a short flash, the key battery needs replacing. To replace the battery, follow the instructions shown in chapter “Lancia CODE System”.

If, with the remote control battery charged, the alarm cannot be switched on, contact your **Lancia Dealership** to have the system checked.

IMPORTANT If the car is to be stored for a long period of time (over three weeks) and safety conditions permitting, it is recommended that central locking is actuated by turning the key in the door lock, so as not to switch the alarm on and, thus, avoid running down the battery.

REPLACING THE BATTERIES

Replace the batteries with equivalent batteries which can be purchased at common stores, if the key led **F** flashes briefly once and led **L** (**fig. 12**) in front of the steering wheel stays on with fixed light for approximately two minutes (after switching the alarm off), when button (**C**, **D** or **E** **fig. 10**) is pressed.

Replace the batteries as follows:

– press button **B** (**fig. 11**) and bring the metal insert **A** to the open position;

– by means of a fine tip screwdriver, turn the opening device **G** to 🔓 and remove the battery holder **H**;

– replace the battery **I** observing the proper bias;

– refit the battery holder into the key and secure it, by turning the device **G** to 🔒.

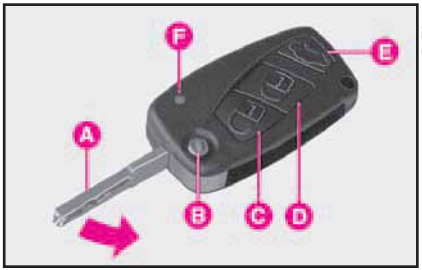


fig. 10

fig. 11

fig. 12

Used batteries pollute the environment. Dispose of them in the special containers, as specified by current legislation or take them to a Lancia Dealership, which will deal with their disposal.

REQUEST FOR ADDITIONAL REMOTE CONTROLS

The receiver will acknowledge up to 8 remote controls.

If extra remote controls are ordered, in addition to the ones originally supplied, remember to carry out the same programming procedure for all the remote controls when the car is new.

The control unit will subsequently exclude this type of programming to prevent anyone else programming the control unit to acknowledge other remote controls.

If, therefore, you ever need a new remote control, go directly to a **Lancia Dealership**, taking with you all the keys in your possession, the CODE card, personal identification and the car ownership papers.

MINISTERIAL HOMOLOGATION

In the respect of the legislation in force in each country in the matter of radio-frequency devices, please note that:

– the market-specific homologation numbers are listed in the following section: Radio-frequency remote control: ministerial homologation;

– the homologation number is printed on the component for markets where this is required.

The code marking may also be printed on the transmitter and/or the receiver for versions/markets where this is required.

INDIVIDUAL SETTINGS

Only adjust the driver's seat when the car is stationary.

MANUALLY ADJUSTABLE FRONT SEATS (fig. 13-14)

Moving the seat backwards or forwards

Lift lever **A** (**fig. 13**) and push the seat backwards or forwards; you are in the correct position for driving when your hands are resting on the steering wheel rim and your arms are slightly bent. Once you have released the lever, check that the seat is firmly locked in the runners by trying to move it back and forth. Failure to lock the seat in place could result in the seat moving suddenly and dangerously.

Height adjustment

Lift or lower lever **B** repeatedly to raise or lower the seat.

Adjusting the reclining seat back

Turn knob **C** forwards or backwards to straighten or recline the seat back.

Lumbar adjustment

Press button **E** (**fig. 14**) to adjust the driver's seat lumbar support.

ELECTRICALLY ADJUSTABLE SEATS (where fitted) (fig. 15)

Only make adjustments of the driver's seat when the car is stationary.

The adjustment is only possible when the ignition key is at **MAR** (with the exception of the driver's seat back fore/aft adjustment, the height adjustment and seat back adjustment).

Use controls **A** and **B** (**fig. 15**):

◀▶ to adjust the seat forwards and backwards (control **A**);

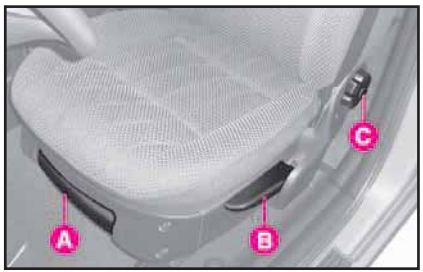


fig. 13

fig. 14

▲▼ to adjust the height of the front and rear part of the driver's seat and the rear part only of the passenger's seat (control **A**);

◀▶ to adjust the seat back (control **B**).

Driver's seat lumbar adjustment

This device makes it possible to vary back support and improve comfort. Press the front part of the button **C** (**fig. 15**) to increase the support and the rear part of the button to decrease it.

Heating (where fitted)

Press button **D** (**fig. 15**) to switch the seat heating on. Press the button again to switch it off.

The LEDs on the dashboard will light up (**A-fig. 16** = driver's seat, **B** = passenger's seat).

Storing the driver's seat positions (where fitted-fig. 17)

The system allows to store and recall two different driver's seat and external rearview mirror positions.

The seat and rearview mirror position can only be stored when the ignition key is at **MAR**.

Adjust the driver's seat position and the external rearview mirrors as described.

Press button "**MEM**" and either button "**1**", "**2**" or "**3**" corresponding to each of the stored positioned at the same time until two confirmation beeps are heard.

The previously stored position will automatically be deleted when a new position is stored under the same button.

To recall a position, press the respective button "**1**", "**2**" or "**3**" with the door open. The seat will move automatically and stop when the stored position is reached. A confirmation beep will be heard.

IMPORTANT The lumbar adjustment and the seat heating function are not controlled by the stored seat position system.

fig. 15

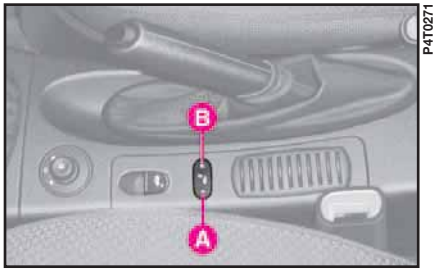


fig. 16

fig. 17

HEAD RESTRAINTS (fig. 19)

To improve passenger safety, the height of the front and rear side head restraints can be adjusted so that the head rests on them properly.

Remember that the head restraints should be adjusted to support the back of your head and not your neck. Only if they are in this position will they be able to provide effective protection in the event of a rear-end shunt.

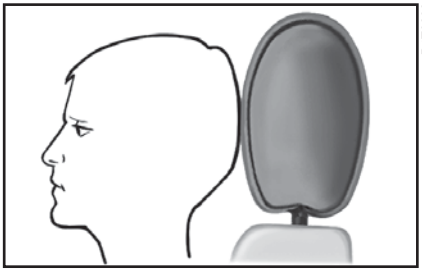


fig. 19

Front seats (fig. 20)

To adjust the front head restraint height, move it upwards to the required position. To lower the front head restraint, keep button **A** depressed and return it to the required position. The front head restraints can be adjusted for tilt by moving them in the direction of the arrows as shown in the figure below. Front head restraints are not removable.

Rear side seats (fig. 21)

To adjust the rear side head restraint height, lift it from its housing until hearing a click.

To bring it back to the original position: press buttons **A** and lower the head restraint until it fits into the seat back.

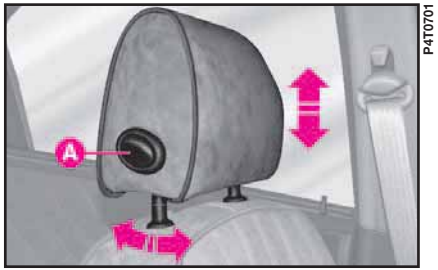


fig. 20

Rear central seat

Versions with single seat (**fig. 22**):

To improve passenger safety the height of the head restraint can be adjusted.

To raise it, grip the head restraint at the base and pull it upwards completely until hearing a click.

To lower it, press it downwards keeping button **A** pressed until hearing a click.

Versions with twin seat (**fig. 23**):

To adjust the rear central head restraint height, lift it from its housing until hearing a click.

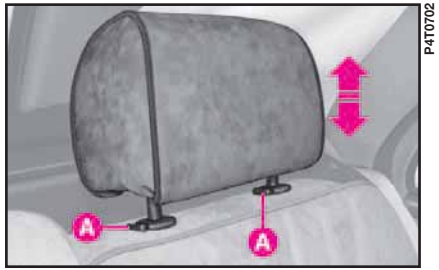


fig. 21

To raise it easily, grip the head restraint from the back.

To bring it back to the original position: press buttons **A** and lower the head restraint until it fits into the seat back.

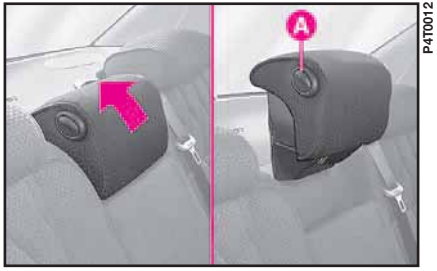


fig. 22

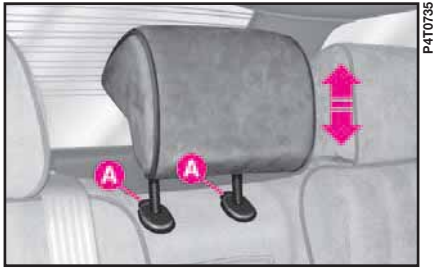


fig. 23

FRONT ARMREST (fig. 24)

The armrest can be adjusted up or down.

To use the armrest, lower it as shown in the figure.

An oddment compartment is concealed inside the armrest. Press button **A** to lift the cover.

IMPORTANT When the armrest has been lifted completely, take care not to accidentally press button **A**, otherwise you will open the object tray cover and the contents will fall out.

fig. 24

REAR ARMREST (fig. 25)

Lower the armrest to the position shown for use by lowering the lever on the armrest.

To close, lift the armrest into its housing.

fig. 25

On versions with single seat the rear armrest is equipped with glass-tin holder (**fig. 26**).

fig. 26

STEERING WHEEL (fig. 27)

The steering wheel height and axial position can be adjusted.

1) Move lever **A** to position **1**.

2) Adjust the steering wheel (by pulling, pushing, lifting or lowering it).

3) Return the lever to position **2** to lock the wheel in place.

Only make adjustments when the car is stationary.

fig. 27

fig. 28

INTERNAL REARVIEW MIRROR

Manually adjustable (fig. 28)

This mirror can be adjusted in four directions by means of lever **A**:

1) normal position

2) anti-dazzle position.

The mirror is also fitted with a safety device that releases the mirror in the event of an impact.

Automatically adjustable (where fitted-fig. 29)

This mirror is automatically set to day and night position.

fig. 29

EXTERNAL REARVIEW MIRRORS (fig. 30-31-32)

These mirrors can only be adjusted when the ignition key is at **MAR**.

Turn switch **A** (**fig. 30-31**) to position **1** (left-hand mirror) or to position **2** (right-hand mirror) to select the mirror to be adjusted.

Press switch **A** to adjust the mirror in the four directions.

After adjusting, turn switch **A** back to position **0** to prevent moving the mirrors accidentally.

The mirrors can be folded manually or electrically (where fitted) to reduce side clearance.

Turn switch **A** (**fig. 31**) to position **3** to fold the mirrors electrically (where fitted). Turn the switch to position **0** to return the mirrors to their normal position.

If the mirrors make it difficult to get through narrow gaps and in automatic car washes, fold them from position 1 to position 2 (fig. 32).

The mirrors are automatically demisted/ defrosted when the heated rear window is operated.

IMPORTANT The curve of the mirror surface makes objects seem further away than they actually are.

Storing rearview mirror positions (where fitted)

The external rearview mirror position is stored along with the driver's seat position in versions fitted with a driver's seat electrical adjustment and storing feature.

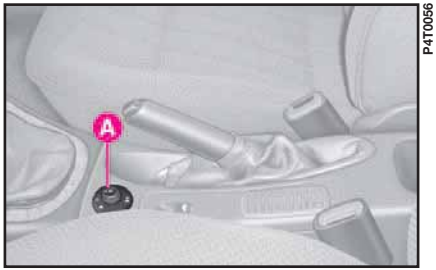


fig. 30

fig. 31

fig. 32

SEAT BELTS

HOW TO USE THE SEAT BELTS (front and rear seats - fig. 33)

To fasten the seat belts, take the tongue of fastener **A** and push it into buckle **B**, until you hear it click.

Pull the seat belt gently. If it jams, let it rewind a little and pull it out again without jerking.

Instrument panel warning light will come on if the ignition key is turned to **MAR** and the driver's seat belt is not fastened.

To release the seat belts, press button **C**. Guide the seat belt with your hand while is rewinding to prevent it from twisting.

The seat belt reel mechanism ensures that the belt automatically adjusts to the wearer allowing him or her to move in complete freedom.

When the car is parked on a steep slope the reel mechanism may block; this is normal.

The reel mechanism prevents the webbing coming out when it is jerked or if the car brakes sharply, is in a collision or when cornering at high speed.

Never press button (C) when travelling.

For maximum safety, keep the back of your seat upright, lean back into it and make sure the seat belt fits closely across your chest and hips.

fig. 33

ADJUSTING THE HEIGHT OF THE SEAT BELTS (fig. 34)

Always adjust the height of the front seat belt to fit the person wearing it. This could greatly reduce the risk of injury in the case of collision.

The belt is adjusted properly when the webbing passes approximately halfway between the edge of the shoulder and the neck.

The seat belt can be adjusted to one of five different heights.

Only adjust seat belt height when the car is stationary.

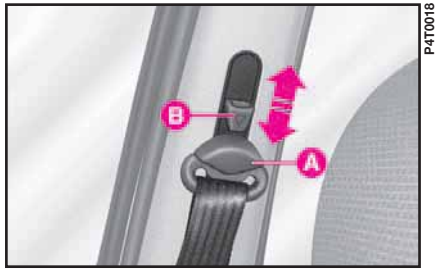


fig. 34

To raise the belt

Lift loop **A** to the required position.

To lower

Press button **B** and move loop **A** downwards at the same time to the required position.

After adjustment, always check that the slider is anchored in one of the positions provided. To do this, with the button released, exert a further pressure to allow the anchor device to catch if release did not take place at one of the preset positions.

FRONT SEAT BELT LOAD LIMITING DEVICE

In order to increase passive safety, the front seat belt reels have a built-in load limiting device which collapse in a controlled fashion so to dose the force on the passenger's shoulder during retaining operation.

USE OF THE REAR SEAT BELTS

The rear seat belts must be worn as shown (**fig. 35**).

You should put the belt on when you are sitting upright and leaning back in your seat.

When no-one is sitting in the rear seats, carefully fold the belts and buckles and stow them away in the receptacles in the seat back.

fig. 35

Remember that in the case of a violent collision, back seat passengers not wearing seat belts also represent a serious danger to the passengers in the front.

Make sure the seat back is correctly hooked on both sides to prevent seat back being thrown forwards and injuring passengers should you brake sharply.

GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE USE OF THE SEAT BELTS

The driver is responsible for respecting and enforcing the local rules and laws regarding the use of seat belts.

Proper backrest coupling is guaranteed when each handle (B – fig. 35 / a) and (C – fig. 35 / b), is retracted in its housing.

Make sure the seat belts of the front and rear passengers are fastened at all times. You increase the risk of serious injury or death in a collision if you travel with the belts unfastened.

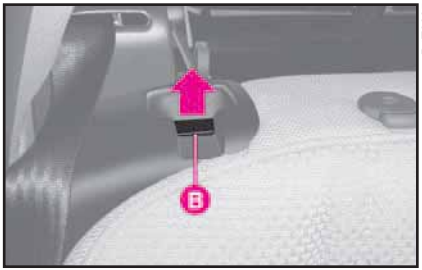


fig. 35/a

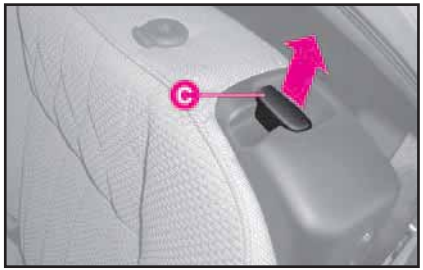


fig. 35/b

The webbing must not be twisted. The upper section must pass across the shoulder and chest diagonally. The lower part must fit closely across the passenger's hips and not the abdomen, to prevent them from sliding forwards (fig. 36). Do not use clips, fasteners etc. to prevent the belt adhering to the passenger's body.

IMPORTANT Arrange the child restraint seat on the rear seat behind the passenger's seat. This is the most protected position in the passenger compartment in the event of a collision.

fig. 36

Seat belts must also be worn by expectant mothers: the risk of injury in the case of accident is much greater for them and their unborn child too if they do not have a seat belt on. Of course, they must position the lower part of the belt very low down so that it passes under the abdomen (**fig. 37**).

fig. 37

fig. 38

Never travel with a child sitting on the passenger's lap with a single belt to protect them both (fig. 38).

HOW TO KEEP THE SEAT BELTS IN PROPER WORKING ORDER AT ALL TIMES

1) When wearing the seat belts, always ensure they are not twisted and are free to wind in and out.

2) Following a serious accident, replace the belt being worn at the time, even if it does not seem damaged.

3) When cleaning the belts, wash them by hand with water and neutral soap, rinse them and let them dry in the shade. Do not use strong detergents, bleach, colourings or any other chemical substance that could weaken the fibres.

4) Do not allow the reel mechanisms to get wet: they are only guaranteed to work properly if they remain dry.

CARRYING CHILDREN SAFELY

SERIOUS DANGER: Never place cradle child's seats on the front passenger seat of cars fitted with passenger air bag since the air bag activation could cause serious injuries, even mortal.

You are advised to carry children always on the rear seat, as this is the most protected position in the case of a crash. In any case, children's seats must absolutely not be fitted on the front seat of car's with passenger's air bag, which during inflation could cause serious injury, even mortal, regardless of the seriousness of the crash that triggered it. Children may be placed on the front seat of cars fitted with passenger's air bag deactivation. In this case, it is absolutely necessary to check the warning light on the cluster to make sure that deactivation has actually taken place (see paragraph front and side air bags at item front passenger air bag).

The front passenger seat shall be adjusted in the most backward position to prevent any contact between child's seat and dashboard.

For optimal protection in the event of a crash, all passengers must be seated and wearing adequate restraint systems.

This is even more important for children.

According to 2003/20/EC Directive, this prescription is compulsory for all European Community countries.

Compared with adults, their head is proportionally larger and heavier than the rest of the body, while the muscles and bone structure are not completely developed. Therefore, correct restraint systems are necessary, other then adult seat belts.

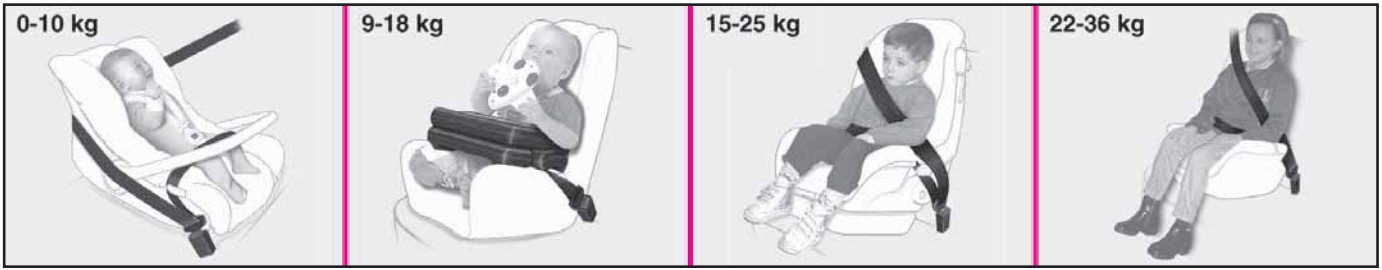


fig. 39

The results of research on the best child restraint systems are contained in the European Standard ECE-R44. This Standard enforces the use of restraint systems classified in five groups:

Group 0	0-10 kg in weight
Group 0+	0-13 kg in weight
Group 0	9-18 kg in weight
Group 0	15-25 kg in weight
Group 0	22-36 kg in weight

As it may be noted, the groups overlap partly and in fact, in commerce it is possible to find devices that cover more than one weight group (**fig. 39**).

All restraint devices must bear the certification data, together with the control brand, on a solidly fixed label which must absolutely never be removed.

Over 1.50 m in height, from the point of view of restraint systems, children are considered as adults and wear the seat belts normally.

Lineaccessori Lancia offers seats for each weight group, which are the recommended choice, as they have been designed and experimented specifically for Lancia cars.

GROUP 0 and 0+

Babies up to 13 kg must be carried facing backwards on a cradle seat, which, supporting the head, does not induce stress on the neck in the event of sharp deceleration.

The cradle is restrained by the car seat belts, as shown in **fig. 40** and in turn it must restrain the child with its own belts.

fig. 40

The figure is only an example for mounting. Attain to the instructions for fastening which must be enclosed with the specific child restraint system you are using .

GROUP 1

Starting from 9 kg to 18 kg in weight, children may be carried facing forwards, with seats fitted with front cushion (**fig. 41**), through which the car seat belt restrains both child and seat.

fig. 41

The figure is indicative for assembly only. The seat should be installed following the instructions that must accompany it.

Seats exist which are suitable for covering weight groups 0 and 1 with a rear connection to the vehicle belts and their own belts to restrain the child. Due to their size, they can be dangerous if installed incorrectly fastened to the car belts with a cushion. Carefully follow the instructions for installation provided with the seat.

GROUP 2

Starting from 15 kg to 25 kg in weight, children may be restrained directly by the car belts. The only function of the seat is to position the child correctly in relation to the belts, so that the diagonal part adheres to the chest and not to the neck and that the horizontal part clings to the child's pelvis and not the abdomen (**fig. 42**).

The figure is only an example for mounting. Attain to the instructions for fastening which must be enclosed with the specific child restraint system you are using.

fig. 42

GROUP 3

For children from 22 kg up to 36 kg the size of the child's chest no longer requires a support to space the child's back from the seat back.

Fig. 43 shows proper child seat positioning on the rear seat.

Children taller than 1.50 m can wear seat belts like adults.

fig. 43

Passenger seat compliance with regulations on child's seat use

Lancia Lybra complies with the new Directive 2000/3/EC regulating child's seat assembling on the different car seats according to the following tables:

Group	Range of weight	SEAT		
		Front passenger	Side rear passenger	Central rear passenger
Group 0, 0+	fino a 13 kg	U	U	U
Group 1	9 - 18 kg	U	U	U
Group 2	15 - 25 kg	U	U	U
Group 3	22 - 36 kg	U	U	U

Key:

U = suitable for child restraint systems of the "Universal" category, according to European Standard ECE-R44 for the specified "Groups"

Below is a summary of the rules of safety to be followed for carrying children:

1) The recommended position for installing children's seat is on the rear seat, as it is the most protected in the case of a crash.

2) In cars fitted with passenger air bag never place child's restraint systems on the front seat since children shall never be seated on the front passenger seat.

3) If the passenger's air bag is deactivated always check the warning light on the cluster to make sure that it has actually been deactivated.

4) Attain to the instructions for fastening the specific child restraint system which you are using. These instructions must be provided by the manufacturer. Keep the child restraint system installation instructions with the car documents and this Handbook. Never use a child restraint system without installation instructions.

5) Always check the seat belt is well fastened by pulling the webbing.

6) Only one child is to be strapped to each retaining system.

7) Always check the seat belts do not fit around the child's throat.

8) While travelling, do not let the child sit incorrectly or release the belts.

9) Passengers should never carry children on their laps. No-one, however strong they are, can hold a child in the event of a crash.

10) In case of an accident, replace the seat with a new one.

PRETENSIONERS

Your car is fitted with pretensioners on the front side seats to improve protection. These devices are triggered by a sensor in the event of a violent impact and pull back a few inches of webbing. In this way the pretensioner ensures that the belt is adhering perfectly to the body before the belt begins to hold back the wearer.

When the pretensioner has been triggered the retractor will lock. The seat belt cannot be drawn back up even when guiding it manually.

Some smoke may be produced when the pretensioner is triggered. The smoke is harmless and does indicate the beginning of a fire.

The pretensioners do not require any maintenance or lubrication. Any modification of their original state invalidates its efficiency.

If, as the result of exceptional natural occurrences (floods, sea storms etc.), the device is soaked through with water and mud, it must be replaced.

The pretensioner will give maximum protection when the seat belt adheres snugly to the wearer's chest and hips.

Operations involving banging, vibrations or heating (exceeding 100°C for a maximum of six hours) in the area around the pretensioner may trigger or damage the device. Vibrations from rough road surfaces or accidental jolting caused by mounting pavements etc. do not have any effect on the pretensioner. If, however, you need any assistance, go to a Lancia Dealership.

Under no circumstances should the components of the pretensioner be tampered with or removed. Any interventions should be carried out by qualified and authorised personnel. Always contact a Lancia Dealership.

The pretensioner can only be used once. After a collision that has triggered it, have it replaced at a Fiat Dealership. The validity of the device is written on the plate located in the glove compartment. Contact Lancia Dealership to have pretensioners replaced as this date approaches.

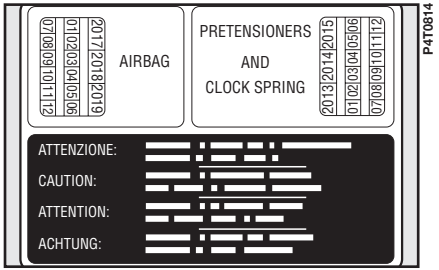


fig. 45

FRONT AND SIDE AIRBAGS

The car is equipped with front airbags for driver (**fig. 45/a**) and passenger (**fig. 46**), and with side airbags, side bags (**fig. 47**) and window bags (**fig. 48**).

fig. 45/a

FRONT AIRBAGS

Description and operation

The front airbag (driver and passenger) is a safety device which is immediately triggered in the event of a front impact.

Please don't apply stickers or other objects to the steering wheel, to the air-bag cover on the passenger's side or on the side roof lining to the upholstery on the roof side. Don't place objects on the dashboard passenger's side (such as mobile phones) because they could tamper with the correct opening of the passenger's air-bag and than cause serious injuries to the vehicle occupants.

The front Air bag consists of an instantly inflatable bag housed in a special compartment located:

– in the centre of the steering wheel on the driver's side;

– in the dashboard on the passenger's side (larger bag).

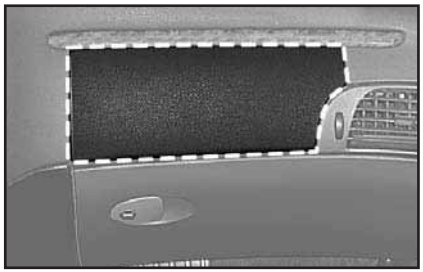


fig. 46

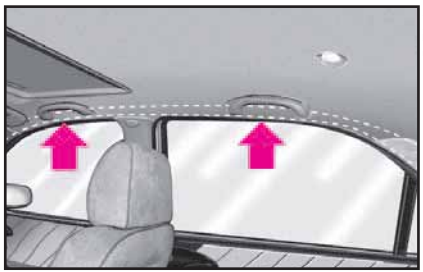


fig. 48

The front airbag (driver and passenger) is a device which protects the occupants of the car during a head-on collision of a medium-high degree by placing a soft bag between the passenger and the steering wheel or the dashboard.

In a collision, an electronic control unit processes the signals from a deceleration sensor and, where required, inflates the airbag.

The bag inflates instantly and acts as a soft protective barrier between the front seat passengers and the structures in front of them that could cause injury. The bags deflates immediately afterwards.

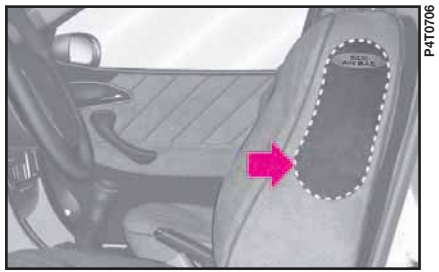


fig. 47

A passenger not wearing the seat belt may crash into the bag before it is fully inflated. In this case, the protection is considerably decreased. The airbag, as a consequence, is not a replacement for the use of seat belts but rather a complement. We recommend that seat belts are worn at all times as prescribed by legislation in Europe and most other countries worldwide.

In the event of front collisions at low speed, the restraining action of the seat belts is sufficient and the airbag is not inflated.

For impacts against very deformable or mobile objects (traffic sign poles, heaps of gravel or snow, parked vehicles), rear impacts (e.g. a car crashing into the back), side impacts, wedging under other vehicles or barriers (e.g. under a truck or guard rail), the airbag does not offer additional protection with respect to the seat belts and may even be undesirable.

The fact that the airbag is not triggered in these situations, this does not signify a malfunction.

PASSENGER'S FRONT AIRBAG

The passenger's airbag was designed and calibrated to protect a person wearing seat belts.

When fully inflated, the bag will fill most of the space between the dashboard and the passenger.

SEVERE DANGER: If the car has a passenger's airbag, do not place the child restraint seat on the front seat. If required, always deactivate the passenger's front airbag when a child seat is placed on the front seat. Although it may not be prescribed by law, we recommend reactivating the airbag as soon as it is no longer necessary to carry children to provide better protection to adult passengers.

Warning light indicates also warning light failure. This is indicated by intermittent flashing, over 4 seconds, of warning light . In this event, warning light could be not up to indicate restraint system failures, if any. Stop the car and contact Lancia Dealership to have the system checked.

Manually deactivating the passenger's front airbag (fig. 49)

The passenger's front airbag can be deactivated if it is absolutely necessary to carry a child in the front passenger seat.

The airbag is deactivated with the ignition key by means of the switch on the right-hand side of the dashboard (**fig. 46**). The switch can only be reached when the door is open.

fig. 49

Only turn the switch when the engine is not running and the ignition key is removed.

The key switch (**fig. 49**) has two possible positions:

1) Passenger's front airbag active: (position **ON** ⊗) instrument panel warning light off. Do not carry children on the front seat.

2) Passenger's front airbag deactivated: (position **OFF**) instrument panel warning light on. A child may be carried on the front seat, protected with a specific restraint system.

The warning light on the instrument panel will stay on until the passenger front airbag is reactivated.

The side airbag will work although the front airbag is deactivated.

The key can be inserted and removed from the switch with the door open in any of the two positions.

The passenger's front airbag deactivated warning light will signal airbag warning light faults. In this case, the situation on the instrument panel is:

– airbag warning light off;

– passenger front airbag deactivated warning light flashing (past the normal four seconds).

Stop the car and contact Lancia Dealership to have the system checked.

SIDE AIRBAGS
(SIDE BAG – WINDOW BAG)

Purpose of the side airbags is to increase passenger protection in the event of a side impact of medium to high severity.

Side airbags consist of an instantly inflatable bag:

- the side bag is housed in the front seat backs. This solution ensures that the bag is always in an optimal position with respect to the passenger, regardless of the seat position;

- since the window bag is a "window" system it is housed in the roof side covering, masked with a proper finishing that enables bag deflation downwards. This solution has been studied for protecting the head and therefore to offer the best passenger protection in the event of a side impact. The "window" solution offers the aforesaid top protection performance through the wide deflation surface and the self-supporting characteristics, the same type of protection is also offered to rear seat passengers.

In the event of a side collision the electronic control unit processes the signals coming from a deceleration sensor and, if required, fires the bags.

The bag inflates instantly and acts as a soft protective barrier between the body of the front seat passengers and the car door. The bag deflates immediately afterwards.

In the event of side collisions at low speed, the restraining action of the seat belts is sufficient and the airbag is not inflated.

The airbag, as a consequence, is not a replacement for the use of seat belts but rather a complement. We recommend that seat belts are worn at all times as prescribed by legislation in Europe and most other countries world-wide.

Side airbags are not deactivated by front airbag switch operation, as described in the previous paragraph and therefore in the event of side impact, protection is guaranteed also to any child carried on the front passenger seat.

IMPORTANT The front and/or side airbags can be triggered if the car is involved in hard impacts or collisions in the area of the underbody, e.g.: violent impacts against steps, kerbs or projecting objects fixed to the ground, or if the car falls into large pot-holes or dips in the road surface.

IMPORTANT When the airbag is fired it emits a small amount of powders and smoke. This is not harmful and does not indicate the beginning of a fire. Furthermore the surface of the inflated bag and the passenger compartment may be covered with powdery residues. This powder may irritate skin and eyes. In the event of exposure, wash with mild soap and water.

The air bag system has a validity of 14 years as to the pyrotechnic charge, and 10 years as to the twisted contact. As this date approaches, contact **Lancia Dealership** to have it replaced.

IMPORTANT After an accident which triggered the airbags, go to a **Lancia Dealership** to have the entire safety system, the electronic control unit, the seat belts and the pretensioners replaced and to have the electrical system checked.

Any diagnostic, repair or replacement operations concerning the airbag system must exclusively be carried out at a **Lancia Dealership**.

If you are having the car scrapped, have the airbag system deactivated at a **Lancia Dealership** first.

If the car changes hands, the new owner must be made aware of the indications given above and be given this "Owner Handbook".

IMPORTANT Pretensioners, front airbags and side airbags are activated by the electronic control unit according to the type of impact. Consequently, missed activation of one or more system components does not indicate a fault in the system.

GENERAL NOTES

If the warning light does not turn on when turning the ignition key to MAR or if it stays on when travelling, this could indicate a failure in safety retaining systems; under this condition air bags or pretensioners could not trigger in the event of collision or, in a restricted number of cases, they could trigger accidentally. Stop the car and contact Lancia Dealership to have the system checked immediately.

When the ignition key is turned to MAR (passenger front airbag deactivation switch at ON), the warning light will come on for approximately four seconds and flash for other four seconds to remind the driver that the passenger's front and side airbags will be fired in the event of a crash. The warning light should go out immediately afterwards.

If an attempt has been made to steal the car, or if it has actually been stolen or has been vandalised in any way or subjected to flooding, have the airbag system checked over at a Lancia Dealership.

Do not apply stickers or other objects to the steering wheel, to the passenger's airbag cover or to the side airbag covers.

Do not travel with objects on your lap or in front of you nor with a pipe, pencil or similar between your lips; you could seriously hurt yourself if the airbag inflates in a collision.

Always drive with both hands on the rim of the steering wheel so that the airbag is free to inflate during a head-on collision and protect you from serious injury. Do not drive with your body bending towards the steering wheel, but sit in an upright position with your back resting against the seat.

It is important to remember that the airbag can be fired even when the car is stationary if it is hit by another vehicle travelling at suitable speed. As a consequence, hever sit children in the front seat, even if the car is not moving. On the contrary, the airbags will not be fired if the car is crashed into when the key is not inserted or turned. Consequently, in this case, the fact that the system is not fired does not indicate a fault.

Do not wash the seat back in cars with side airbags with pressurised steam or water in automatic seat washing stations.

Do not cover back rest of front seats with trims or covers there are not set for the use of side bags.

The airbag does not replace seat belts but rather increases their effectiveness. Furthermore, the airbag is not fired in the event of low speed front collisions, side collisions, rear-end shunts and roll-overs. In these cases, the passengers are only protected by the seat belts which for this reason must always be fastened.

The airbag is set to be fired in the event of collisions which are greater than the pretensioner settings. Consequently, for collisions in the bracket between the two thresholds, it is normal for only the pretensioners to be fired.

INSTRUMENT PANEL

PETROL VERSIONS

fig. 50

DIESEL VERSIONS

fig. 51

A Engine coolant temperature gauge with overheating warning light - **B** Speedometer - **C** Kilometre counter (and trip meter) - **D** Engine rev counter - **E** Fuel gauge and reserve warning light - **F** Warning lights - **G** Trip meter reset button.

INSTRUMENTS

IMPORTANT After stopping the engine (turning the key to **STOP**), the speedometer and the rev counter are re-calibrated for approximately one second. During this time, the speedometer and rev counter needles will hover and a slight ticking sound may be heard.

SPEEDOMETER (fig. 52)

The speedometer shows the car speed expressed in kilometres per hour (km/h).

IMPORTANT The speedometer may present different full scale values according to the versions.

REV COUNTER (fig. 53-54)

If the needle is in the hazard sector (the section with the progressively closer lines) it shows your car's engine is over-revving. Do not travel with the needle in this sector.

When the engine is idling, the rev counter may show a gradual or sudden increase in engine speed, according to the case. This is normal and indicates the operation of the climate control compressor or fans, etc. In particular, a gradual variation in engine revolution speed safeguards battery charge.

IMPORTANT The hazard sectors can present different widths and different full scale values according to the various car versions.

IMPORTANT The electronic injection control system will progressively cut off the flow of fuel when the engine is over-revving and the engine will consequently lose power.

fig. 52

fig. 53 - petrol versions

fig. 54 - diesel versions

ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE WITH OVERHEATING WARNING LIGHT (fig. 55)

This instrument indicates the engine coolant temperature. It starts signalling the temperature when this reaches approximately 50°C.

The needle should usually be on middle scale values. Reduce your demand on the engine if the needle approaches top scale values.

The warning light will come on to indicate that the coolant temperature is too hot. In this case, stop the engine immediately and contact a **Lancia Dealership**.

IMPORTANT The needle may approach the top scale values if the engine cooling radiator external part is obstructed or dirty.

In this case, inspect and remove the obstructions. Accurately clean the external part of the radiator as soon as possible.

FUEL GAUGE AND RESERVE WARNING LIGHT (fig. 56)

The fuel reserve warning light will come on to indicate that there are approximately eight litres of fuel in the tank.

Do not travel with the fuel tank almost empty: the gaps in fuel delivery could damage the catalyser.

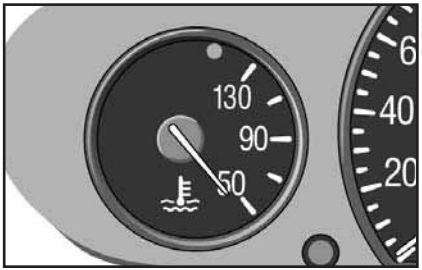


fig. 55

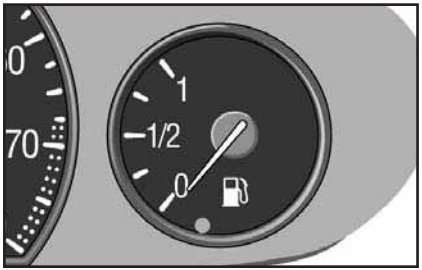


fig. 56

KILOMETRE COUNTER (AND TRIP METER) (fig. 57-58)

The following information is shown on display (**fig. 57**):

– the total number of kilometres driven (six digits) on the first line

– the trip meter reading (four digits) on the second line.

Press button **B** (**fig. 58**) for at least one second seconds to reset the trip meter.

IMPORTANT The trip meter reading will be deleted if the battery is disconnected.

fig. 57

fig. 58

WARNING LIGHTS

The warning lights come on in the following circumstances:

LEFT-HAND DIRECTION INDICATORS (flashing) (green)

When the direction indicator stalk is pushed down and when the hazard lights are on (along with the right-hand direction indicator warning light).

RIGHT-HAND DIRECTION INDICATORS (flashing) (green)

When the direction indicator stalk is pulled up and when the hazard lights are on (along with the left-hand direction indicator warning light).

TRAILER DIRECTION INDICATORS (green)
Contact a Lancia Dealership for connections

When electrically connected to a trailer and the director indicator stalk or the hazard light switch is operated.

GLOW PLUGS (amber)
(jtd versions - amber)

When the ignition key is turned to **MAR**. The light will go out when the glow plugs reach the prescribed temperature.

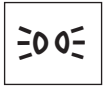
Start the engine as soon as the warning light goes out.

If after starting the engine, the warning light flashes for approximately 30 seconds, you can run the engine but you should contact a **Lancia Dealership** as soon as possible to have the problem solved.

When the outside temperature is high, the warning light may come on for a moment only.

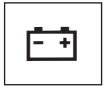
MAIN BEAM HEADLIGHTS (blue)

When the main beam headlights are switched on.



OUTSIDE LIGHTS (green)

When the side/taillights are switched on or the ignition key is turned to **PARK**.



BATTERY NOT RECHARGING PROPERLY (red)

When there is a fault in the current generating system.

The warning light should come on when the ignition key is turned to **MAR** and should go out as soon as the engine starts.

LOW ENGINE OIL PRESSURE (red)

When the engine oil pressure falls below the normal level.

The warning light should come on when the ignition key is turned to **MAR** and should go out as soon as the engine starts.

A delay in the light going out is acceptable only when the engine is idling.

If the engine has been taxed heavily, the light may flash when idling. It should, however, go out when you accelerate slightly.

If the warning light comes on when the car is running, stop the engine and contact a Lancia Dealership.

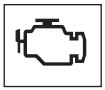
SEAT BELTS (red)

When the driver's seat belt is not fastened correctly.

FRONT BRAKE PADS WORN (red)

When the front brake pads are worn. Have them replaced as soon as possible.

IMPORTANT The car is equipped with front brake pad wear sensors only. Have the rear brake pads checked when the front pads are replaced.



EOBD SYSTEM ENGINE CONTROL SYSTEM (amber)
(in compliance with directive 98/69/CE-EURO3)

In normal conditions, the warning light will come on when the ignition key is turned to **MAR** and should go out as soon as the engine is started. The initial lighting up shows that the warning light is working properly.

Warning light either stays on or comes on while travelling:

Fixed light - warning of a fuel feed/ignition/injection system failure which may increase emissions in exhaust or cause possible drops in performance, poor handling and high consumption.

In such conditions, you can continue driving but you should not tax the engine and you should moderate the speed. Prolonged use with the warning light on can cause damage. Contact a **Lancia Dealership** as soon as possible.

The warning light will go out when the failure disappears. In any case, the system will store the error.

Flashing light - warning that the catalyser can be damaged (see "EOBD system" in this chapter).

If the warning light starts flashing, release the accelerator pedal and slow the engine down until the warning light stops flashing. Continue driving at moderate speed, preventing the warning light from coming on again. Contact a **Lancia Dealership** as soon as possible.

Contact a Lancia Dealership as soon as possible if the warning light either does not come on when the key is turned to MAR or comes on, with fixed or flashing light, when travelling.

AIRBAG FAILURE (red)

The warning light should come on when the ignition key is turned to **MAR** and should go out after approximately four seconds.

The warning light will come on permanently when there is an airbag system failure.

If the warning light does not turn on when turning the ignition key to MAR or if it stays on when travelling, this could indicate a failure in safety retaining systems; under this condition air bags or pretensioners could not trigger in the event of collision or, in a restricted number of cases, they could trigger accidentally. Stop the car and contact Lancia Dealership to have the system checked immediately.

ABS (ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM) FAILURE (amber)

The warning light should come on when the ignition key is turned to **MAR** and should go out after approximately four seconds.

The warning light comes on when there is a failure in the ABS system. In this case, the normal braking system continues to work although without the ABS assistance but you should have the car seen to at a **Lancia Dealership** as soon as possible.

The car is fitted with an electronic braking device (EBD). The and warning lights come on at the same time when the engine is running to indicate that there is an EBD system failure. In this case violent braking may be accompanied by early rear wheel locking with the possibility of skidding. Drive the car extremely carefully to the nearest Lancia Dealership to have the system checked.

LOW HANDBRAKE BRAKE FLUID AND/OR HANDBRAKE ENGAGED (red)

The warning light should come on when the ignition key is turned to **MAR** and should go out after approximately four seconds.

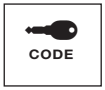
The warning light will come on after the check phase when the brake fluid level in the reservoir drops under the minimum level due to a possible leakage in the system or when the handbrake is engaged.

If the warning light comes on when travelling, check whether the handbrake is engaged. If the warning light stays on and the handbrake is not engaged, stop immediately and contact a Lancia Dealership.

WATER IN DIESEL FUEL FILTER (amber) - (jtd versions)

Lights up when there is water in the diesel fuel filter.

The presence of water in the fuel feed circuit can severely damage the injection system and make the engine misfire. Go to a Lancia Dealership as soon as possible when the warning light comes on to have the bleeding operation carried out.



LANCIA CODE (amber)

In three cases (with the key at **MAR**):

1. One flash - the key code has been recognised. The engine can be started.

2. Fixed light - the key code was not recognised. Carry out the emergency start-up procedure to start the engine (see "In an emergency").

3. Flashing light - the car is not protected by the device. The engine however can be started.

CRUISE CONTROL (where fitted - amber)

The warning light comes on when the switch on the cruise control stalk is turned to **ON** when the device starts governing the engine.

PASSENGER'S FRONT AIRBAG DEACTIVATED (where fitted - amber)

The warning light will come on when the passenger front airbag is deactivated.

Warning light indicates also warning light failure. This is indicated by intermittent flashing, over 4 seconds, of warning light . In this event, warning light could be not up to indicate restraint system failures, if any. Stop the car and contact Lancia Dealership to have the system checked.

CHECK CONTROL (red)

When a fault is found by the check control system.

ESP (amber) (where required)

By turning the key to **MAR** position, the warning lamp on the dashboard will light up and go out after about 4 seconds.

If the warning lamp does not go out or stays on when the vehicle is running, contact your **Lancia Dealership**.

The flashing of the warning lamp when the vehicle is running indicates the actuation of the ESP system and/or the ASR function.

The simultaneous lighting up of warning lamp on the dashboard and of the LED on the switch indicate ASR function malfunction. In this case, contact your **Lancia Dealership**.

The ESP system operates even when the undersized spare wheel is used. However, it should be kept in mind that the undersized spare wheel is smaller than the other wheels and, therefore, its grip on the roadbed is reduced. Therefore, warning lamp ESP might light up under particular adhesion conditions and/or driving manoeuvres; verify that the lamp goes out when the ordinary wheel is fitted. When the undersized spare wheel is fitted to the vehicle, do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h and avoid manoeuvres that might cause the vehicle to go out of control.

For correct operation of the ESP system the tyres must absolutely be of the same brand and type on all wheels, in perfect conditions and, above all, of the specified type, brand and size.

HILL HOLDER
(amber)
(where required)

By turning the key to MAR position, the warning lamp on the dashboard will light up and go out after about 4 seconds.

If the warning lamp does not go out or stays on when the vehicle is running, contact your Lancia Dealership.

CHECK CONTROL
(fig. 59)

The check control function is managed by the instrument panel. The function informs the driver of faults or warnings by displaying warning lights and messages on the ICS display.

For details on warning light operation, see "Warning lights" in this chapter.

The faults and warnings which are displayed by the check control function are shown on the screen regardless of the operative status of the ICS.

The display will light up if the check control (only versions with Lancia I.C.S. system with navigator - where fitted) function sends a message when the ICS system is off and standing by. The corresponding symbol will appear on the last selected screen.

1 - External light fuse/system/bulb failure warning light

2 - Rear fog light bulb failure warning light

3 - Left-hand brake light bulb failure warning light

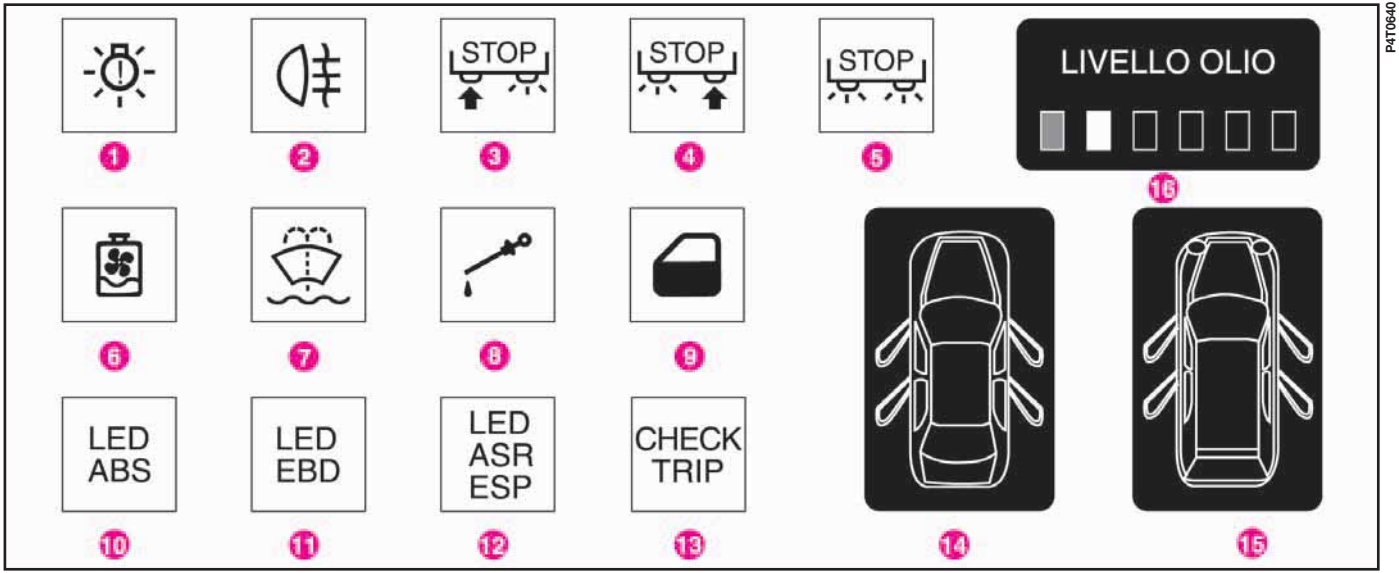


fig. 59

4 - Right-hand brake light bulb ailure warning light

5 - Brake light bulb failure warning light

6 - Low engine coolant level warning light (where fitted)

7 - Low windscreen washer fluid level warning light (where fitted)

8 - Low engine oil level warning light (diesel versions only)

9 - Open door or boot/tailgate warning light

10 - Instrument panel (ABS) warning light failure warning light

11 - Instrument panel (ABS) and (!) warning light failure warning light (the simultaneous lighting up of these two warning lights indicates an EBD electronic brake force distributor failure)

12 - Instrument panel (A) warning light failure warning light

13 - Check control failure warning light

14 - Open door or boot icon (saloon car versions)

15 - Open door or tailgate icon (Station Wagon versions)

16 - Engine oil level gauge (diesel versions only).

The check control function can display two warning lights at the same time, side by side in addition to warning light **9** (open door or boot/tailgate).

If there are more than two warnings, the respective warning lights will be cyclically displayed every two seconds. The red **CHECK** message will appear in the right-hand part of the display. The red **CHECK** message will also appear if the external light bulb failure warning light **1** comes on.

The external light bulb failure warning light **1** will always come on in the event of a rear fog light bulb, left-hand brake light bulb or right-hand brake light bulb failure along with the respective warning lights (**2-3-4-5**).

IMPORTANT The warning lights will continue to be displayed also when a different screen or display function is selected until the problem which caused the warning is removed. The warning lights **1-8-10-11-12-13** have priority over the other check control function information.

WARNING MESSAGES

When the engine is started and a fault is found, the following messages will appear on the display (for approximately five seconds) before the warning lights **1-10-11-12-13** come on:

– **LIGHT FAILURE** (warning light **1**)

– **ABS LED KO** (warning light **10**)

– **EBD LED KO** (warning light **11**)

– **LED ESP KO** (warning light **12**)

– **MISSING CHECK AND TRIP COMPUTER SIGNAL** (warning light **13**)

OPEN DOOR OR BOOT/TAILGATE WARNING LIGHT (9-14-15)

Icon **14** (saloon cars) or **15** (station wagons) will be displayed in the right-hand part of the main menu display while warning light **9** will appear in the lower left-hand part when the key is turned to **MAR**.

If the door or boot/tailgate is left open, icon **14** or **15** will disappear after approximately one minute while warning light **9** will stay on.

Warning light **9** only will appear in the lower left-hand part of the display to signal that a door or the boot/tailgate is open when the system is displaying another function.

The car icon **14** or **15** will appear again in the right-hand part of the display (as described above) when the main menu is selected again.

LOW ENGINE OIL LEVEL WARNING LIGHT AND GAUGE (8-16) (jtd versions only)

The engine oil level will appear on the main screen for approximately ten seconds after the screen when the key is turned to **MAR**.

The engine oil level is displayed only when it is under the minimum safety level.

IMPORTANT The system checks the oil level only when the engine is started if at least 20 minutes have past since the engine was stopped.

The oil level is displayed by means of six bars. There are two values and two display modalities:

– oil level corresponding to the safety level: first bar on the left red or white, according to the versions, second bar white, other bars empty.

– oil at minimum level: first bar on the left red or white, according to the versions, other bars empty.

If the level is low or insufficient (0 or 1 bar displayed), warning light **8** will come on. The warning light will be displayed also when other screens or functions are selected.

Icon **16** will flash for approximately five seconds and warning light **8** will come on to indicate an oil level sensor failure.

In all conditions (low oil level or faulty sensor), the red **CHECK** message will appear for several seconds in the right-hand part of the display.

IMPORTANT The low engine oil level warning light **8** has priority over the other check control function information.

WARNING LIGHT LED AND LANCIA I.C.S. CONTROL LED (fig. 60 - where fitted)

Red LED **A**: this LED lights up for approximately four seconds when the key is turned to **MAR** while the check control function is running. Any faults will be signalled by the respective warning lights and by the **CHECK** warning light. The LED will go out after approximately ten seconds.

Green LED **B**: this LED is used for lighting the Lancia ICS controls at night. It will light up when the key is turned to **MAR** (approximately two seconds after the red LED **A**).

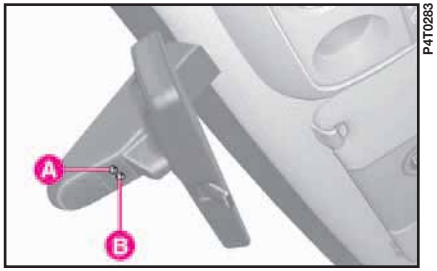


fig. 60

LANCIA ICS WITH MULTIFUNCTIONAL DISPLAY

(version without NAVIGATION SYSTEM)

fig. 61

The Lancia ICS (Integrated Control System) features a multifunctional 5" LCD which is directed so that it can also be read by the passenger.

The multifunctional display controls the following functions:

– Sound system with tape player and CD player (where fitted) (*)

– Analogue/digital clock

– Trip computer

– Check control function (*)

(*) Refer to the specific paragraphs for description and operation.

CONTROLS

1) Sound system/tape player/CD player (where fitted) buttons

2) - ICS and sound system on/off knob, for adjusting volume and audio settings

3) ICS function selection and confirmation knob

4) Sound system settings display button

5) Language, clock functions and speed limit button

6) Trip computer functions button

7) Display brightness button

SWITCHING THE ICS ON AND OFF

The ICS is switched on automatically when the engine is started (i.e. when the key is turned to **MAR**) and switched off when the key is turned to **STOP**.

Press knob **2** (**fig. 61**) with the ignition key off or extracted to operate the sound system only. The sound system will automatically be switched off after approximately 20 minutes.

ADJUSTING THE DISPLAY BRIGHTNESS

The display may employ several minutes to reach the set brightness according to the temperature.

Keep button **LIGHT 7** pressed (regardless of whether the outside lights are on or off) to adjust the display brightness. The brightness will be adjusted progressively from minimum to maximum and from maximum to minimum in approximately two seconds. Minimum and maximum brightness conditions will be held for approximately one second.

IMPORTANT The display will be illegible when set to minimum brightness.

The display will automatically be dimmed when the outside lights are switched on. The buttons will be set according to the brightness of the other instruments.

The last set brightness will be automatically restored whenever the engine is started, regardless of whether the outside lights are on or off.

MULTIFUNCTIONAL DISPLAY

The display will show the LANCIA trademark for approximately four seconds when it is switched on. This will be followed by two different configurations (**fig. 62-63**) according to the ICS operative conditions.

The screen is usually split into four areas containing the following information (**fig. 62**):

A – Data related to the sound system/CD player (where fitted) and to the engine oil level (diesel versions only).

B – Analogue clock and warning lights.

fig. 62

C – Date, digital clock and various warning messages.

D – Car icon with open door/boot/tailgate warning lights, trip computer functions, SETUP functions, sound system functions and EXP functions.

The sound system information will appear in area **A** only when the sound system is on. The message **RADIO OFF** will appear when the sound system is not on. The following information is provided when the CD player is on (where fitted):

– the selected CD number (from 1 to 6)

– the selected track

– the duration of the selected track.

The engine oil level (diesel versions only) will not appear if it is over the minimum safety level.

The analogue clock will not be displayed in area **B** if any warning lights are on. The time will be displayed on the digital clock in area **C**.

The message **SPEED LIMIT EXCEEDED** will appear in area **B** when the set speed limit is exceeded.

The date, the digital clock (when the analogue clock is not displayed to make room for the warning lights) and the warning messages (**ABS LED KO**, **EBD LED KO**, and **LIGHT FAILURE**) will be shown in area **C**. These messages will be displayed for approximately five seconds when the system is switched on and will then be replaced by the respective warning lights in area **B**.

The car icon with the open door/boot/tailgate warning lights, the trip computer functions, the SETUP functions, the sound system functions and the EXP function is shown in area **D**.

The message **MISSING CHECK AND TRIP COMPUTER SIGNAL** will appear if a fault in the connection between instrument panel and ICS occurs. In this case, go to a **Lancia Dealership**.

A screen split into three main areas (**fig. 63**) and featuring a RETURN function (⏎) will appear when either the **HELP RADIO**, **SETUP** or **TRIP** button is pressed. The following information will be provided:

E - Press the **HELP RADIO 4** button. The sound system operating conditions are shown: **VOLUME**, **BASS**, **TREBLE**, **BALANCE**, **FADER**, **STATION 1-2-3-4-5-6**, **FM 1-2-3**. **LW**, **MW**.

fig. 63

Press the **SETUP** button **5**. The following selectable options will be shown: **SPEED LIMIT**, **SET TIME**, **SET DATE**, **ALARM**, **TYRE PRESSURE** (these values cannot be edited), **LANGUAGE 1-2-3-4-5**, **SUMMER SAVING TIME ON-OFF**.

Press the **TRIP** button **6**. The following information will be shown: **RANGE**, **AVG CONSUMPTION**, **TRAV DISTANCE** (kilometres driven since last reset), **AVERAGE SPEED**, **TIME ELAPSED**.

F – Digital clock (when no warning lights are displayed) and warning lights (when there is a fault).

G – Sound system and CD player data (when the sound system is on) or the message **RADIO OFF** (when the sound system is off).

The RETURN function (represented by the ⏎ symbol in some screens) will either take you back to the ICS main menu (**fig. 61**) or to the previous page of a menu from a sub-menu page.

The ⏎ symbol (RETURN) in some screens will turn white when it is selected.

DISPLAY SETTINGS (fig. 64)

Press the button **SETUP 5** (**fig. 61**) with the key at **MAR**. A screen with the following functions will appear after the LANCIA trademark screen:

– SPEED LIMIT

– SET TIME

– SET DATE

– ALARM (set) and ON/OFF

– TYRES (the prescribed tyre inflation pressure)

fig. 64

– SUMMER SAVING TIME ON/OFF

– ITALIANO

– ENGLISH

– FRANCAIS

– DEUTSCH

– ESPANOL.

Select RETURN (⏎) after adjusting the settings by turning knob **3** (**fig. 61**) and pressing to confirm. This will take you back to the main menu.

Setting the clock

Select the SET TIME function (**fig. 64**) by turning knob **3** (**fig. 61**) and press the knob to confirm. A screen with the following fields will appear on the display (**fig. 65**):

– Hours **A**

– Minutes **B**

– RETURN **C**.

Select field **A** (hours) by turning knob **3** and pressing it to confirm.

Then turn knob **3** clockwise to increase the hours and anticlockwise to decrease them. Press knob **3** when the required time is shown to confirm.

Select field **B** (minutes) by turning **3** and pressing it to confirm.

Then turn knob **3** clockwise to increase the minutes and anticlockwise to decrease them. Press knob **3** when the required time is shown to confirm.

Select RETURN **C** after adjusting the settings by turning knob **3** and pressing to confirm. This will take you back to the **SETUP** menu (**fig. 64**).

The digital clock will be automatically adjusted with the analogue clock.

Switching the summer saving time on and off

The SUMMER SAVING TIME ON/OFF function allows to switch to summer saving time and back without changing the clock settings.

Select SUMMER SAVING TIME ON (☑) to forward the clock by one hour and SUMMER SAVING TIME OFF (☐) to go back by one hour.

Select ON or OFF (☑/☐) by means of knob **3** and press it to confirm.

Setting the date

Select the SET DATE function (**fig. 64**) by turning knob **3** (**fig. 61**) and press the knob to confirm. A screen with the following fields will appear on the display (**fig. 66**):

– Day **A**

– Month **B**

– Year **C**

– RETURN **D**.

fig. 65

fig. 66

Select field **A** (day) by turning knob **3** and pressing it to confirm.

Then turn knob **3** clockwise to increase the days (from 1 to 31) and anticlockwise to decrease them (from 31 to 1). Press knob **3** when the required day is shown to confirm.

Select field **B** (month) by turning knob **3** and pressing it to confirm.

Then turn knob **3** clockwise to increase the months (from 1 to 12) and anticlockwise to decrease them (from 12 to 1). Press knob **3** when the required month is shown to confirm.

Select field **C** (year) by turning knob **3** and pressing it to confirm.

Then turn knob **3** clockwise to increase the years and anticlockwise to decrease them. Press knob **3** when the required year is shown to confirm.

Select RETURN **D** after adjusting the settings by turning knob **3** and pressing to confirm. This will take you back to the **SETUP** menu (**fig. 64**).

Switch the alarm function on and off

Select the ALARM function (**fig. 64**) by turning knob **3** (**fig. 61**) and press the knob to confirm. A screen with the following fields will appear on the display (**fig. 67**):

– Hours **A**

– Minutes **B**

– RETURN **C**.

fig. 67

Select field **A** (hours) by turning knob **3** and pressing it to confirm.

Then turn knob **3** clockwise to increase the hours and anticlockwise to decrease them. Press knob **3** when the required time is shown to confirm.

Select field **B** (minutes) by turning **3** and pressing it to confirm.

Then turn knob **3** clockwise to increase the minutes and anticlockwise to decrease them. Press knob **3** when the required time is shown to confirm.

Select RETURN **C** after adjusting the settings by turning knob **3** and pressing to confirm. This will take you back to the **SETUP** menu (**fig. 65**).

Select ON or OFF by turning the knob **3** to switch the function on and off.

The message ON will appear on the main menu when the alarm function is on.

A buzzer will ring at the set time for approximately 12 seconds also if the ignition key is removed.

Selecting the language

Select the language by means of knob **3** (**fig. 61**) and press the knob to confirm.

The available languages are ITALIAN, ENGLISH, FRENCH, GERMAN, SPANISH.

Speed limit

The SPEED LIMIT functions informs the driver with a visual and/or acoustic warning whenever the set speed limit is exceeded.

Turn knob **3** (**fig. 61**) to select the function and press the knob to confirm.

A screen with the following fields will appear on the display (**fig. 68**):

– Set speed limit in km/h **A**

– Set speed limit warning on/off **B**

– Buzzer on/off **C**

– RETURN **D**.

Select field **A** (set speed) by turning knob **3** and pressing it to confirm.

fig. 68

Then turn knob **3** clockwise to increase the speed and anticlockwise to decrease it. Press knob **3** when the required speed is shown to confirm.

Select field **B** ON or OFF to switch the SPEED LIMIT function on or off as required and press knob **3** to confirm.

Select field **C** ON or OFF to switch the buzzer on or off as required and press knob **3** to confirm.

The system will provide the following warnings when the SPEED LIMIT function is on and the set speed is exceeded:

– the buzzer (if the respective function **C** is on) will sound for approximately four seconds if the speed does not drop to at least 5 km/h under the limit;

– the SPEED LIMIT function will be displayed instead of the main menu (**fig. 68**) to allow to change the set value or switch the buzzer and function on or off.

– the message **SPEED LIMIT EXCEEDED** will appear on the display;

– the sound system (if on) will be muted (**MUTE** function).

The message **SPEED LIMIT EXCEEDED** will remain on the display until the speed drops to at least 5 km/h under the speed limit or until the SPEED LIMIT function is switched off.

Select RETURN **D** after adjusting the settings by turning knob **3** and pressing to confirm. This will take you back to the **SETUP** menu (**fig. 64**).

Tyre inflation pressure

Select the TYRE function by turning knob **3** (**fig. 61**) and press the knob to confirm. The prescribed tyre inflation pressure according to the load will be displayed.

IMPORTANT This function provides the prescribed value and not the actual tyre inflation pressure. Check the tyre inflation pressure on a regular basis.

TRIP COMPUTER (fig. 69)

Press the **TRIP** button **6** (**fig. 61**) with the key at **MAR**. A screen with the following functions will appear after the LANCIA trademark screen:

– RANGE

– AVG CONSUMPTION (TRIP MODE)

– FLASH CONSUMPTION (KEY MODE)

– TRAV DISTANCE (kilometres driven since last reset)

– AVERAGE SPEED

– TIME ELAPSED (since the last start-up or reset)

– KEY/TRIP

– TRIP RESET.

If the TRIP function is on (manual data resetting), you can reset data by selecting and confirming the TRIP RESET field in the function screens.

At the end of the settings, either press **TRIP 6** again (**fig. 61**) to go back to the main menu, or **HELP RADIO 4** to go to the sound system functions screen, or **SETUP 5** to go to the display setting screen.

fig. 69

IMPORTANT When the engine is started (i.e. the key is turned to **MAR**) the trip computer processes the data required for the various functions.

During this phase, the range, consumption, etc. values are not displayed for approximately 30 seconds.

Range (fig. 70)

Select the RANGE function by turning knob **3** (**fig. 61**) and press the knob to confirm. The approximate distance (expressed in km and rounded up or down by 1 km) which can be travelled with the fuel left in the tank providing the same mean consumption conditions computed since the function was switched on.

The range value is updated by the system every 30 seconds. The calculation accuracy is lower than 1 km.

IMPORTANT If the range is lower than 50 km and the fuel has reached the reserve level, a dotted line will appear instead of the range value. If on the other hand the range is lower than 50 km but the fuel has not yet reached the reserve level, the value 50 will appear and not change.

Select RETURN after adjusting the settings by turning knob **3** (**fig. 61**) and pressing to confirm. This will take you back to the main menu (**fig. 69**).

Average consumption (visible with the TRIP function on) (fig. 71)

Select the AVG CONSUMPTION function by turning knob **3** (**fig. 61**) and press the knob to confirm. The mean consumption for the last five minutes (expressed in l/100 km and roun-ded up or down by 0.1 l/100 km.) is displayed.

The mean consumption value is updated by the system every second. The calculation accuracy is lower than 0.1 l/100 km.

fig. 70

Select RETURN by turning knob **3** (**fig. 61**) and pressing to confirm. This will take you back to the trip computer main menu (**fig. 69**).

Instant consumption (visible with the KEY function on)

Selecting and confirming the INSTANT CONSUMPTION function, the display will show the vehicle fuel consumption when travelling; it is useful to know the fuel consumption according to the type of driving (in 1/100 Km and with setting of 0.1 1/100 Km)

fig. 71

DISTANCE (distance driven) (fig. 72)

Select the DISTANZA (DISTANCE TRAV) function by turning knob **3** (**fig. 61**) and press the knob to confirm. The distance driven since the trip computer was reset (expressed in km and rounded up or down by 0.1 km) will appear (see "Resetting the trip computer").

The distance driven value is updated by the system every second. The calculation accuracy is lower than 1 km. The maximum value which can be displayed is 25,000 km.

Select RETURN after adjusting the settings by turning knob **3** (**fig. 61**) and pressing to confirm. This will take you back to the trip computer main menu (**fig. 69**).

fig. 72

Average speed (fig. 73)

Select the AVERAGE SPEED function by turning knob **3** (**fig. 61**) and press the knob to confirm. The mean speed since the beginning of the trip is displayed (expressed in km/h and rounded up or down by 0.1 km/h). The mean speed is computed by the system only when the engine is running.

The mean speed value is updated by the system every second. The calculation accuracy is lower than 0.1 km/h.

Select RETURN after adjusting the settings by turning knob **3** (**fig. 61**) and pressing to confirm. This will take you back to the trip computer main menu (**fig. 69**).

fig. 73

Time elapsed (trip time) (fig. 74)

Select the TIME ELAPSED function by turning knob **3** (**fig. 61**) and press the knob to confirm. The time since the trip computer was reset (expressed in hours and minutes) is displayed (see "Resetting the trip computer").

The mean speed value is updated by the system every second. The calculation accuracy is lower than 2 seconds. The maximum value which can be displayed is 99 h and 59 minutes.

Select RETURN after adjusting the settings by turning knob **3** (**fig. 61**) and pressing to confirm. This will take you back to the trip computer main menu (**fig. 69**).

fig. 74

Trip computer operation modalities

The KEY and TRIP functions (**fig. 75**) can be used to set the two operative conditions of the system.

The main different between the two conditions consists of the way the trip computer displays data and the way the data is reset.

With the KEY function on (☑), the trip computer screen is automatically displayed each time that the engine is started and the data is automatically reset.

With the TRIP function on (☑), the data must be manually reset by means of the TRIP RESET function and the trip computer screen can be displayed by pressing the button **TRIP 6** (**fig. 61**).

Select KEY or TRIP by turning knob **3** (**fig. 61**) and press the knob to confirm. Press knob **3** again to switch between one modality and the other.

Resetting the trip computer

The trip computer data can be reset by selecting the TRIP RESET function (**fig. 75**) by turning knob **3** (**fig. 61**) and pressing the knob to confirm. Simply confirm to reset all the stored data.

The TRIP RESET function is only available in TRIP mode.

If the TRIP function is on (manual data resetting), you can reset data by selecting and confirming the TRIP RESET field in the function screens.

fig. 75

SOUND SYSTEM

(built into the Lancia I.C.S. - version without NAVIGATION system)

The sound system is fitted with automatic functions for **volume adjustment**; should it be required to change their parameters see paragraph: EXPERT FUNCTIONS (CUSTOMISING OPERATING PARAMETERS) - EXP (14).

If you drive with the volume too high you put both your own life and that of others in jeopardy.

fig. 76

P4T0709

CONTROLS

1 - Radio station, PTY programme pre-set button and CD one track forward button

2 - Radio station, PTY programme pre-set button and CD repeat track button

3 - Radio station, PTY programme pre-set button and CD random track button

4 - Radio station, PTY programme pre-set button

5 - Radio station, PTY programme pre-set button and previous CD button

6 - Radio station, PTY programme pre-set button and next CD button

7 - Sound system function button (radio, tape player, CD player - where fitted)

8 - AUDIO functions (Bass/Treble/Balance/Fader/Volume) and MUTE function (volume muting) selecting button.

9 - Power knob: display, sound system and volume

10 - LOUDNESS function button (automatic in HI-FI systems)

11 - Traffic Programme and Alternative Frequency function buttons (for RDS programmes)

12 - SCAN function (automatic radio station scanning) and MSS (Music Search System) function (for skipping or repeating a track) button

13 - IS function button (to seek the best received radio stations)

14 - EXP function button (to customised sound system settings)

15 - Function and setting selection and confirmation knob

16 - Radio waveband selection button (LW, MW, FM) and tape AUTOREVERSE function. In some versions, the message DIR may appear instead of the symbol shown under the BAND message.

17 - Radio programme tuning up and tape fast forward button

18 - Radio programme tuning down and tape rewind button

19 - Dolby/Mono function selection button

20 - Maximum reception sensitivity function button

21 - RADIO settings button

22 - LIGHT button (for adjusting display brightness)

23 - Eject tape button

CONTROLS ON STEERING WHEEL (fig. 77 - where fitted)

The main sound system controls are duplicated on the steering wheel. The controls can consequently be operated without distracting the driver.

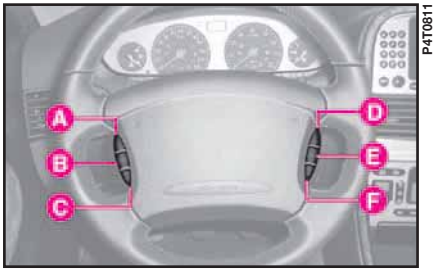


fig. 77

A - Volume up button

B - **MUTE** button

C - Volume down button

D - Radio programme tuning up and tape fast forward button

E - Sound system function button (radio, tape player, CD player - where fitted)

F - Radio programme tuning down and tape rewind button

Adjusting the volume

Press button **A** to turn the volume up or button **C** to turn it down, as shown in "Adjusting the volume". The button operation is identical to that of knob **9** (**fig. 76**) on the Lancia I.C.S.

Muting the volume (MUTE function)

Press the **MUTE B** button to switch the function on and off. The volume will immediately be turned down to zero. The button operation is identical to that of the **AUDIO 8** button on the Lancia ICS (Mute function).

Radio, Tape, CD selection (SRC function)

Repeatedly press the **MODE E** button to cyclically select the functions: **Radio**, **Tape** (if a tape is in the deck), **CD** (if a CD player is fitted) and **Phone** (if a cellular telephone free-hands kit is fitted).

The operation of the **E** button is identical to that of the **SRC 7** button (**fig. 76**) on the sound system.

Radio, Tape, CD settings

Buttons **D** and **F** implement three different functions, according to the mode selected by means of the **E** button (**Radio**, **Tape** or **CD**).

The operation of the buttons is identical to that of the buttons **17** and **18** (**fig. 76**) on the Lancia ICS (described in detail in the following paragraphs).

1) Radio: tuning

Press button **D** or **F** to tune to radio stations in the selected waveband.

2) Tape: fast forward/rewind

Press button **D** or **F** to fast forward or rewind the tape as described in "Fast forward/rewind".

3) CD: next track/previous track

Press button **D** or **F** to play the next or previous track on the CD which is being played as described in "Selecting or repeating a track".

USEFUL ADVICE

Road safety

You should familiarise with the various function of the sound system (e.g. storing stations) before driving off.

If you drive with the volume too high you put both your own life and that of others in jeopardy. You should adjust the volume so that you can hear noises from outside the car (e.g. horns, ambulance/police sirens, etc.).

Reception conditions

Reception conditions vary all the time while the car is moving. Reception may be effected by mountains, buildings or bridges, especially when you are a long way from the broadcasting transmitter of the station you are listening to.

IMPORTANT A considerable increase in volume could occur when traffic information is given.

Care and maintenance

The basic structure of the sound system ensures long-term operation without the need for any particular maintenance. Get in touch with a **Lancia Dealership** if anything goes wrong.

Do not leave tapes in direct sunlight or expose them to excessive heat. Put the cassettes back into their boxes after use.

Use good quality tapes, no longer than C-90 to ensure optimal playback.

Only clean the front panel with a soft, anti-static cloth. Cleaning or polishing agents could damage the surface.

Dirt on the player head from tapes can, in time, reduce treble during playback.

We recommend you clean the head periodically with a specific head cleaner tape (non abrasive).

Keep CDs away from dust. Do not touch the surface to prevent skipping.

Do not insert damaged or deformed CDs in the magazine.

Do not expose discs to sources of heat or sun rays.

Clean dirty CDs with a soft cloth from the centre outwards.

Button		Radio			Tape		CD changer		Phone-in	
		Press briefly	Press for 2 to 4 seconds	Press for longer than 4 seconds	Press briefly	Press for longer than 2 seconds	Press briefly	Press for longer than 2 seconds	Press briefly	Press for longer than 2 seconds
1	1 TRK	Select pre-set station (1-6) PTY: select PTY programme type	Store (■) PTY: Store (◆)	PTY ON			TRACK REPEAT ON/OFF			
2	2 RPT	Select pre-set station (1-6) PTY: select PTY programme type	Store (■) PTY: Store (◆)				Select REPEAT or REPEAT MAG			
3	3 RND	Select pre-set station (1-6) PTY: select PTY programme type	Store (■) PTY: Store (◆)				Select TRACK RANDOM ON/OFF			
4	4	Select pre-set station (1-6) PTY: select PTY programme type	Store (■) PTY: Store (◆)							
5	5 CD–	Select pre-set station (1-6) PTY: select PTY programme type	Store (■) PTY: Store (◆)				Next CD			
6	6 CD+	Select pre-set station (1-6) PTY: select PTY programme type	Store (■) PTY: Store (◆)				Previous CD			

(■) Store pre-set stations under buttons 1-6 (◆) Store PTY programme type (M) CD function status on

Button		Radio			Tape		CD changer		Phone-in	
		Press briefly	Press for 2 to 4 seconds	Press for longer than 4 seconds	Press briefly	Press for longer than 2 seconds	Press briefly	Press for longer than 2 seconds	Press briefly	Press for longer than 2 seconds
❼	SRC	TAPE, CD, RADIO, PHONE (•)			CD, RADIO, PHONE, TAPE (•)		RADIO, PHONE, TAPE, CD, (•)		TAPE, CD, RADIO, PHONE (•)	
❽	AUDIO	BASS, TREBLE, BALANCE, FADER VOLUME (•)	AUDIO MUTE ON/OFF		BASS, TREBLE, BALANCE, FADER VOLUME (•)	AUDIO MUTE ON/OFF	BASS, TREBLE, BALANCE, FADER VOLUME (•)	AUDIO MUTE ON/OFF	BASS, TREBLE, BALANCE, FADER VOLUME (•)	AUDIO MUTE ON/OFF
❾	VOL		ON/OFF Turn left: volume down Turn right: volume up		ON/OFF Turn left: volume down Turn right: volume up		ON/OFF Turn left: volume down Turn right: volume up		ON/OFF Turn left: volume down Turn right: volume up	
❿	LOUD	Select LOUDNESS ON/OFF			Select LOUDNESS ON/OFF		Select LOUDNESS ON/OFF		Select LOUDNESS ON/OFF	
⓫	TP AF	TP function ON/OFF	AF function ON/OFF		TP function ON/OFF		TP function ON/OFF			
⓬	SCANN MSS	Select LEARN SCAN ON/OFF (approximately 10 seconds)			Select MSS ON/OFF		Select TRACK SCAN ON/OFF (approximately 10 seconds)			
⓭	IS	FM: IS LEARN function								
⓮	EXP	Display frequencies and customised settings	EXPERT MODE ON			EXPERT MODE ON	CD changer status (M)	EXPERT MODE ON		EXPERT MODE ON
⓯	15	Turn to select functions Press to confirm selections								
⓰	BAND	FM1, FM2, FM3, MW, LW		FM: AUTOSTORE AM: AUTOSTORE	Manual tape REVERSE					

(■) Store pre-set stations under buttons 1-6 (◆) Store PTY programme type (M) CD function status on (•) Cyclical selection

Button		Radio			Tape		CD changer		Phone-in	
		Press briefly	Press for 2 to 4 seconds	Press for longer than 4 seconds	Press briefly	Press for longer than 2 seconds	Press briefly	Press for longer than 2 seconds	Press briefly	Press for longer than 2 seconds
⑰	©	AM: Automatic search FM: LEARN SCAN FM SEARCH PTY: Select next programme type	AM: Manual tuning FM: Select IS SCAN or RDS SEARCH PTY: Automatic search or selected PTY programme type	FM: Manual tuning	Fast forward With MSS on: Skip track/seek next track		Select next track		Rewind	
⑱	ß	AM: Automatic search FM: LEARN SCAN FM SEARCH PTY: Select previous programme type	AM: Manual tuning FM: Select IS SCAN or RDS SEARCH PTY: Automatic search or selected PTY programme type	FM: Manual tuning	Rewind With MSS on: Skip track/seek start of track		Select previous track	Rewind		
⑲	DOLBY MONO	Select STEREO/MONO			Select Dolby B ON/OFF					
⑳	DX	Select maximum reception sensitivity								
㉑	HELP RADIO	Radio setting screen								
㉒	LIGHT	Adjust display brightness	Adjust display brightness	Adjust display brightness	Adjust display brightness	Adjust display brightness	Adjust display brightness	Adjust display brightness	Adjust display brightness	Adjust display brightness
㉓	▲	Open flap Eject tape			Open flap Eject tape		Open flap Eject tape Fast forward		Open flap Eject tape	

(■) Store pre-set stations under buttons 1-6 (◆) Store PTY programme type (M) CD function status on

GENERAL

Anti-theft protection

This sound system is equipped with an anti-theft protection system consisting of a four-digit secret code.

The protection system makes the sound system useless if it removed (stolen) from the dashboard.

CODE card

The model, the serial number and the respective secret code are shown on the sound system papers.

The serial number is identical to that printed on the device chassis.

The CODE card facilitates searches if the sound system is lost. Furthermore, the ownership paper speeds up compensation procedures on behalf of insurance companies.

Keep the papers in a safe place.

Safety

The sound system will be electronically protected if the electrical power is disconnected when the code is on.

Only you can start the device again by entering its specific code.

Display

If the device has been disconnected from the power supply, enter the secret code and set the time and the date.

For instruction on setting the clock and adjusting the device brightness, see "Lancia ICS with multifunctional display".

Operation with cellular phone

The sound system can be connected to a free-hand cellular phone kit.

The sound will be muted when the cellular phone is in use.

SWITCHING THE SOUND SYSTEM ON AND OFF

The sound system will be automatically switched on when the engine is started (i.e. when the key is turned to **MAR**) along with the ICS and is switched off when the key is turned to **STOP**.

The sound system can be switched on when the key is off or removed by pressing knob **9** (**fig. 76**). It will switched off automatically after approximately 20 minutes. In this case, the display brightness cannot be adjusted.

The switching on and off modality can be changed by means of the IGN function (see the EXPERT function which can be accessed by pressing the **EXP 14** button).

FUNCTION AND SETTING SELECTION AND CONFIRMATION BUTTON (15)

Knob **15** (**fig. 76**) on the right-hand side of the control panel is used to select and confirm the settings.

Turn the knob clockwise or anticlockwise to go from one parameter to the other.

The selected parameter will appear brighter.

Press the knob to confirm the displayed parameter selection.

ADJUSTING THE VOLUME

Volume

Turn knob **9** (**fig. 76**) to adjust the volume. Turn the knob clockwise to turn the volume up and anticlockwise to turn it down.

A 16 bar symbol will appear on the display. The bars will light up progressively as the volume increases. The symbol will disappear automatically approximately five seconds after the adjustment.

The volume can also be adjusted by means of the buttons on the steering wheel (where fitted). Press button **A** (**fig. 74**) to turn the volume up and button **C** to turn it down.

Setting the traffic announcement volume

Use the TAVOL function for this purpose (see the EXPERT functions which can be accessed by means of the **EXP 14** button).

Setting the switch-on volume

Use the ONVOL function for this purpose (see the EXPERT functions which can be accessed by means of the **EXP 14** button).

Setting the volume according to car speed

Use the SCVOL function for this purpose (see the EXPERT functions which can be accessed by means of the **EXP 14** button).

Muting the volume (**MUTE**)

Press the **AUDIO** **8** button for longer than one second to mute the volume.

Press the **AUDIO** **8** button again for longer than one second to restore the volume.

Muting the volume during a phone call

Use the PHONE function for this purpose (see the EXPERT functions which can be accessed by means of the **EXP 14** button).

RADIO SETTINGS BUTTON (21)

Press the **HELP RADIO 21** button (**fig. 76**) with the key at **MAR**. A screen showing the settings will appear after the LANCIA trademark screen. The settings are:

– VOLUME

– BASS

– TREBLE

– BALANCE

– FADER

– STATION 1

– STATION 2

– STATION 3

– STATION 4

– STATION 5

– STATION 6

– FM1

– FM2

– FM3

– LW

– MW.

See "Audio settings" for details on how to adjust the VOLUME, BASS, TREBLE, BALANCE and FADER functions.

The names or the frequencies of the six pre-set stations refer to the selected waveband (FM1 - FM2 - FM3 - LW - MW).

Select RETURN (⏎) and confirm to return to the main menu.

The (⏎) symbol will turn white when it is selected.

AUDIO SETTINGS (8)

Press the **AUDIO 8** button (**fig. 76**) with the key at **MAR**. A screen (**fig. 78**) showing the settings will appear after the LANCIA trademark screen. The settings are:

– BASS

– TREBLE

– BALANCE

– FADER

– VOLUME.

Repeatedly press the **AUDIO 8** button to cyclically switch from one function to the other.

fig. 78

The active function is shown in the right-hand part of the display while the settings are shown by a bar symbol in the left-hand part of the display. Turn knob **9** (**fig. 76**) to adjust the settings:

– BASS: to adjust the bass tones (from -6 to +6)

– TREBLE: to adjust the treble tones (from -6 to +6)

– BALANCE: to balance the sound between the speakers on the right-hand side and the left-hand side of the passenger compartment (from 15 L = left to 15 R = right)

– FADER: to balance the sound between the front and rear speakers (from 15 R = rear to 15 F = front)

– VOLUME: to adjust the volume (from 0 to 16).

The system will automatically quit the AUDIO settings screen five seconds after the last adjustment.

IMPORTANT The various AUDIO settings are stored for the different functions (TAPE - RADIO - CD - PHONE). The settings are re-presented when the function is selected.

Loudness function (10)

Press the **LOUD 10** button (**fig. 76**) to switch the function LOUDNESS on and off.

The loudness function improves low volume playback.

The message "LOUD" will appear on the display when the function is on.

The Loudness function is automatic in HI-FI sound system versions.

Dolby/Mono function (DD-MONO) (19)

Press the DD -MONO **19** button (**fig. 76**) to switch the function on and off.

You should use this function when you are tuned to a very poor station to reduce the background noise. The message "STEREO" will disappear when the function is on.

You should use this function when playing back a poorly recorded tape to reduce the background noise. The symbol DD will appear on the displace when the function is on.

The Dolby noise reduction device is made under licence from the Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. Dolby and double D (DD) symbol are registered trademarks of the Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.

SELECTING A FUNCTION (RADIO/TAPE/CD)

Press the **SRC 7** button to display the various functions. Press the button briefly again to make your choice:

– TAPE

– CD (where fitted)

– RADIO (FM, MW or LW)

– PHONE (if a free-hands cellular phone system is fitted only).

The system will automatically quit the function selection screen a few seconds after the last selection.

RADIO

Selecting the waveband

FM waveband: repeatedly press the **BAND 16** button until the required waveband appears on the display ("FM1", "FM2" or "FM3").

AM waveband: repeated press the **BAND 16** button until the required waveband appears on the display ("MW" medium waves or "LW" long waves).

Last Station Memory

After the selection, you can listen to the last programme/station tuned to in the specific waveband (Last Station Memory).

With the Last Station Memory function, the device memorises the settings made before it was turned off - station, tape, CD - and represents them the following time the device is turned on.

Stereo reception - FM

When the radio is tuned to a stereo station the message "STEREO" will appear on the display.

Tuning to Traffic Programmes (TP)

TP (Traffic Programme) = An RDS station broadcasting traffic announcements.

Switching TP function on and off

Press the **TP/AF 11** (**fig. 76**) button briefly.

The message "TP" will appear on the display when the function is on.

IMPORTANT If the station tuned to is not an RDS station broadcasting traffic announcements, a search for a suitable station will be started.

Interrupting traffic announcements

Press the **TP/AF 11** button briefly. The traffic announcement function will however be kept on.

The sound system features the EON function which allows the system to automatically tune to another station providing traffic announcements in the same network as the one you are listening to (only when the TP function is on). It will automatically switch back to the original station when the announcement is over.

IMPORTANT Traffic announcements are played at pre-set volume. The volume can be changed by means of the EXPERT function.

If you wish to listen to traffic announcements only, switch the "traffic programme" function on by means of the **TP/AF 11** button and turn the volume completely down with knob **9** (**fig. 76**).

Tape or CD playback will be interrupted during traffic announcements.

Alternative frequencies (AF)

When tuned to an RDS station which is broadcast by several stations on different frequencies, the sound system will automatically switch to the best received frequency.

IMPORTANT In poor reception areas, the attempts to switch to alternative frequencies may lead to frequent interruptions of sound. In this case, the AF function can be switched off.

Switching the AF function off

IMPORTANT This function can only be turned off when tuned to stations with alternative frequencies.

Press the **TP/AF 11** button for approximately three seconds until the message "AF --" appears on the display. The message "AF OFF" will appear when the button is released and the message "AF" will not appear any longer.

Switching the AF function back on

Press the **TP/AF 11** button for approximately three seconds until the message "AF ON" appears on the display and release the button.

The message "AF" will appear on the display.

Tuning to RDS stations (IS LEARN function)

Up to 30 programmes can be stored in the IS memory (a memory area not corresponding to the pre-set station buttons) with a touch of the IS LEARN button.

The stored programmes can be recalled in sequence.

Use the IS memory function to reprogramme pre-set station buttons or when you are in a new reception area but you do not want to delete the previously stored stations.

Starting the IS LEARN automatic station search

Select either "FM1", "FM2" or "FM3" by means of the **BAND 16** button (**fig. 76**).

Press the **IS 13** button: the message "IS ..." will appear on the display while the tuner is searching waveband.

IMPORTANT Always wait for the automatic Intelligent Search (IS) to end. If no station can be received, the automatic intelligent search function can remain on, e.g. in an underground garage or if the aerial is faulty. In this case, you can stop the automatic search function by pressing a pre-set station button from **1** to **6**.

The automatic IS intelligent search functions stores up to 30 stations with optimal reception.

During automatic IS intelligent search, RDS programmes will be stored first and ordered by programme code. Then FM stations will be stored.

Recalling the IS memory content

Select IS operating mode by pressing either button **17** or **18** for approximately three seconds until the message "IS --" appears on the display.

The message "IS ON" will appear when the button is released.

In this case, the search will follow the station code order.

Press either button **17** or **18** briefly to recall the stored stations in the required order. During selection, the message "IS-SCAN" will appear on the display.

Switching the IS operative mode off.

Press either button **17** or **18** for approximately three seconds until the message "IS --" appears on the display.

The message "IS OFF" will then appear on the display.

In this condition, the search will be made according to the order of programme frequency.

The automatic station search is described in detail in the specific paragraph.

The sound system stores the last search modality in memory ("IS ON" or "IS OFF").

Pre-set station buttons 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6

Select the waveband (FM1, FM2, FM3, MW or LW) by means of the **BAND 16** button.

Tuning to an RDS station/programme

If the RDS station/programme tuned to in the selected waveband (e.g. "FM1") is stored at one of the pre-set station buttons numbered from **1** to **6**, the respective digit will appear on the display, e.g. "3" for pre-set station 3.

Storing RDS stations/programmes

Press a pre-set station button numbered from **1** to **6** for longer than two seconds until you hear the station again.

The AF tuning function will be stored with the station.

Recalling stored RDS stations/programmes

Select the waveband (FM1, FM2, FM3, MW or LW) by means of the **BAND 16** button.

Press a pre-set station button numbered from **1** to **6** briefly.

The stored stations will be kept in memory even when the sound system power is disconnected.

Tuning to RDS stations/ programmes with automatic station search

1) Select the waveband (FM1, FM2, FM3, MW or LW) by means of the **BAND 16** button.

For automatic searches in FM1, FM2 or FM3 wavebands, switch the IS operative mode off. In order to do this, press either button **17** or **18** for approximately three seconds until the message "IS --" appears on the display. The message "IS OFF" will then appear on the display.

Automatic search in the FM wavebands works according to two levels of sensitivity. During the first scan in the reception band, the system seeks only the stations presenting high intensity fields (local stations). During the second scan, the system seeks stations with low intensity fields (distant reception). The message "DX" will appear on the display during the search.

2) Press either button **17** or **18** briefly to start automatic search in the required direction. The respective frequency will appear on the display (e.g. "99.40").

When a station with identification code is found, the code is shown on the display. If not, the frequency is shown.

If the RDS station/programme tuned to in the selected waveband (e.g. "FM1") is stored at one of the pre-set station buttons numbered from **1** to **6**, the respective digit will appear on the display, e.g. "3" for pre-set station 3.

3) To store the tuned station under a pre-set station button, follow the procedure described in the previous paragraph "Pre-set station buttons".

Manual frequency tuning

1) Select the waveband (FM1, FM2, FM3, MW or LW) by means of the **BAND 16** button.

2) Press either button **17** or **18** for approximately six seconds until the message "MAN" appears on the display with the frequency (e.g. "MAN 100.60").

Hold either button **17** or **18** pressed to fast forward.

3) Tune in the required direction by pressing either button **17** or **18**. Press button **17** to increase the frequency by 50 kHz units in FM and 1 kHz units in AM. Press button **18** to reduce frequency in the same fashion.

If the RDS station/programme tuned to in the selected waveband (e.g. "FM") is stored at one of the pre-set station buttons numbered from **1** to **6**, the respective digit will appear on the display, e.g. "3" for stored station 3.

4) To store the tuned station at a pre-set station button, follow the procedure described in the previous paragraph "Pre-set station buttons".

5) Ending manual frequency tuning: press a pre-set station button numbered from **1** to **6** briefly.

IMPORTANT If no button is pressed for more than 60 seconds, the manual frequency tuning function is switched off automatically.

Automatic station storing (AUTOSTORE)

To automatically store the strongest stations in local reception mode in the selected waveband under the pre-set station buttons numbered from **1** to **6**.

Select the waveband (FM1, FM 2, FM3, MW or LW) by repeatedly pressing the **BAND 16** button (**fig. 76**).

Press the **BAND 16** button for approximately six seconds until the message "AS" and the frequency appear on the display.

The best received station at the end of the search will be tuned to.

Programme types (PTY)

Many radio stations in the FM band (FM1, FM2, FM3) offer a "Programme type" (PTY) service. For example, when a news bulletin is being broadcast the message "NEWS" will appear on the display.

The PTY function can act a search filter to tune only to stations broadcasting programmes with the pre-set PTY code (e.g. "POP").

Programme types

The programme types offered by a radio station can change:

NEWS	News bulletins and current affairs
AFFAIRS	Politics and events
INFO	Special information programmes
SPORT	Sports programmes
EDUCATE	Educational and training programmes
DRAMA	Drama and literature
CULTURE	Culture, church and religion
SCIENCE	Science
VARIED	Variety
POP	Pop music (hits)
ROCK M	Rock music
EASY M	Easy listening
LIGHT M	Light classical music
CLASSICS	Classical music
OTHER M	Musical programmes not included in the categories listed (e.g. folklore)
WEATHER	Weather forecasts
FINANCE	Financial news bulletins
CHILDREN	Programmes for children
SOCIAL A	Social information
RELIGION	Religious and philosophical programmes
PHONE IN	Listeners' phone-in programmes (different from the "phone in" function active only when connected to a free-hands cellular phone kit)
TRAVEL	Tourism
LEISURE	Leisure, hobbies and spare time activities
JAZZ	Jazz music

COUNTRY	Country music
NATIONAL	National programmes
OLDIES	Golden Oldies
FOLK M	Folk music
DOCU	Special reports
NO PTY	No programme type identification code

Automatic PTY search

There are two possible ways to select a automatic programme type search.

1) Six programme types are assigned to the **1**-**6** PTY buttons (pre-set station buttons). The pre-set assignment can be changed at will.

2) You can choose a programme type from the stored list and start the automatic search.

The procedure is described in the following paragraphs.

PTY function

1) Starting the PTY function

Press the **TP/AF 11** button for approximately six seconds until the message "PTY ON" appears on the display. Then the last selected programme type will appear (e.g. "POP").

2) Setting the programme type

Press a button from **1** to **6** briefly. The automatic PTY search will start from the first station offering the selected programme type. The programme type will be shown briefly (e.g. "POP") followed by the station code and the message "PTY".

- Alternatively -

Repeatedly press either button **17** or **18** until the required programme type appears on the display.

Press either button **17** or **18** for approximately two seconds to start the PTY automatic search.

The PTY automatic search will automatically stop at the following station offering the selected programme type. The programme type (e.g. "POP") and the message "PTY" will appear on the display.

IMPORTANT If no station offers the selected programme type, the sound system will tune to the last tuned station and the PTY function will be abandoned.

3) Switching the PTY function off

This will occur automatically after approximately 10 seconds.

Pre-set PTY programme buttons

Pre-set station buttons

The standard setting is: **1** NEWS, **2** SPORT, **3** POP, **4** ROCK M, **5** CLASSICS and **6** EDUCATE.

Each pre-set station button can be set to a programme type as required:

1) Switch the PTY function on. Press the **TP/AF 11** button for approximately six seconds until the message "PTY ON" appears on the display. Select the required programme type (e.g. "NEWS").

2) Repeatedly press either button **17** or **18** until the required programme type appears on the display.

3) Press one of the pre-set station buttons for longer than two seconds.

RDS station frequency

The frequency of the RDS station currently tuned to can be displayed.

Press the **EXP 14** button briefly.

The transmission frequency will be displayed for approximately ten seconds in the place of the station name.

Scanning pre- set stations (SCAN function) (12)

The scan function automatically scans the stations stored with the IS function. Each station will be played for ten seconds.

Press the **SCAN 12** button to switch the function on.

Maximum reception sensitivity (DX function) (20)

The DX function is used to obtain the maximum radio station sensitivity allowing to automatically tune to local stations regardless of the other radio functions.

Press **DX 20** to switch the function on and off.

The message "DX" will appear on the display when the function in on.

EXPERT FUNCTION (CUSTOMISING THE OPERATING PARAMETERS) - EXP (14)

To make the everyday use of the sound system as easy as possible, the EXPERT function can be used to customise certain settings which need to be used only once or very occasionally.

Press the **EXP 14** button (**fig. 76**) with the key at **MAR** to access the EXPERT functions. The EXPERT function screen with appear after the LANCIA trademark screen.

Press the **EXP 14** button again to quit the EXPERT function.

fig. 79

Possible EXPERT setting list (fig. 76)

– RDS CLOCK SYNC (SYNC ON/OFF) - To switch synchronisation of clock to RDS station signals on and off.

– TA VOLUME ADJUST (TAVOL) - To set the minimum volume for traffic announcements.

– AUTO-LEARN TP (LRN ON/OFF) - To automatically search for traffic announcement programmes.

– RDS REGION (REG ON/OFF) - To switch the automatic regional programme tuning function on and off.

– RADIO-ON MAXIMUM VOLUME (ONVOL) - To set the maximum switch-on volume.

– BDLY ON/OFF - To set the booster switch-on delay (where fitted).

– IGNITION LOGIC (IGN ON/OFF) - To switch the sound system on automatically with the engine.

– PHONE SETTING (PHONE ON/OFF) - To mute the sound for incoming or outgoing phone calls with connected free-hands kit.

– PHONE AMPLIFICATION (PHONE 00/03) - To set the cellular phone input sensitivity (to be calibrated when the free-hand phone kit is fitted).

– SPEED-CONTROLLED VOLUME (SCVOL) - To set the volume according to the car speed (SCV).

– THEFT-PROTECTION CODE (CODE) - To activate the safety code.

The information concerning the settings is given in the right-hand part of the display :

– function description

– buttons **4-5** (**fig. 76**) for adjusting the setting

– buttons to select the new function (**17** for the following function - **18** for the previous function) (**fig. 76**).

The current function setting is shown in the left-hand side of the display.

The last selected setting is recalled with the EXPERT function.

Selecting and adjusting the settings

Select the setting to be checked or changed with the buttons **17** and **18** (**fig. 76**).

For example, to adjust the maximum switch-on volume, select the ONVOL function with the buttons **17** or **18**. The ONVOL function and the current setting (e.g. ONVOL 13) will appear on the display. The station which the radio is tuned to will be played at the set volume.

Adjust the volume as required with the buttons **4** and **5**:

– press button **5**: to turn the volume up

– press button **4**: to turn the volume down.

Press the button repeatedly to adjust the setting gradually or hold it pressed to adjust the setting fast.

When you have made the required setting, you can make other adjustments (use buttons **17** and **18** to select the function) or quit the EXPERT function by press the **EXP 14** button.

Switching synchronisation of clock to RDS station signals on and off

Select the RDS CLOCK SYNC (SYNC ON/OFF) setting (**fig. 80**):

– button **5** = "SYNC ON". The system clock is synchronised with the RDS data.

– button **4** = "SYNC OFF". The synchronisation feature can be switched off in areas where no RDS TIMER signals are received.

Very often the timer signal broadcast by the stations is wrong.

Setting the minimum volume for traffic announcements

Select the TA VOLUME ADJUST (TAVOL) setting (value from 4 to 31) (**fig. 81**):

– button **4** = VOL - (to turn the volume down).

– button **5** = VOL + (to turn the volume up).

During setting, the volume heard is that selected for traffic announcements.

Automatically traffic announcement programmes search

With "LRN OFF" (standard) the sound system remains tuned to the selected station until it is basically illegible.

With "LRN ON" the sound system tunes to a new station as soon as the received signal quality decreases.

If you are travelling in an area where the reception of RDS programmes broadcasting traffic announcements is poor, you can stop the radio station search.

Select the AUTO-LEARN TP (LRN ON/OFF) setting (**fig. 82**):

– button **5** = "LRN ON" to automatically search for traffic announcements,

– button **4** = "LRN OFF" if you do not want to automatically search for traffic announcements.

fig. 80

fig. 81

fig. 82

Switching automatic regional programme tuning function on and off

If an RDS programme consists of several regional programmes, the sound system can switch between programmes due to changes in reception.

Select the RDS REGION (REG ON/OFF) setting (**fig. 83**):

– button **5** = "REG ON" automatic regional programme tuning is possible.

– button **4** = "REG OFF" automatic regional programme tuning is not possible.

Setting the maximum switch-on volume

Select the RADIO-ON MAXIMUM VOLUME (ON VOL) setting (value from -- to 31) (**fig. 84**):

– button **5** = VALUE + (to turn the volume up).

– button **4** = VALUE – (to turn the volume down).

Volume is limited only if the volume of the sound system is higher than the set volume when it is switched off.

Setting the booster switch-on delay (where fitted)

Select the BDLY ON/OFF setting (**fig. 85**):

– button **5** = "BDLY ON".

– button **4** = "BDLY OFF".

This function eliminates "boosts" when switching the system on and off.

fig. 83

fig. 84

fig. 85

Switching the sound system on automatically with the engine

Select the IGNITION LOGIC (IGN ON/OFF) setting (**fig. 86**):

– button **5** = "IGN ON". The sound system can be switched on/off by means of the car's ignition switch.

– button **4** = "IGN OFF". The sound system can be switched on/off by means of the knob **9** (**fig. 76**) only.

Muting the sound for incoming or outgoing phone calls with connected free-hands kit

Select the PHONE SETTING (PHONE ON/OFF) setting and use buttons **4** and **5** to adjust (**fig. 87**):

fig. 86

– "PHONE OFF". No telephone connected

– "PHONE ON". When the telephone is in use, the sound system is automatically muted.

The "PHONE ON" function is active providing the phone mute on the cellular phone support is connected.

"PHONE IN" The telephone conversation can be heard by means of the car speakers.

The "PHONE IN" is active providing your cellular phone is connected to the free-hand control unit (where fitted).

If the sound system is off, telephone calls (incoming or outgoing) are however possible:

fig. 87

– the sound system will switch on automatically

– the sound system will set to the same sound conditions as the last telephone call (BASS, TREBLE, FADER, BALANCE)

– the sound system will automatically switch off at the end of the call.

Setting the cellular phone input sensitivity (to be calibrated when the free-hands kit is fitted)

To adapt to the level of signal emission of the installed free-hands kit. This setting is to be made by the **Lancia Dealership** when the free-hands kit is fitted.

Select the PHONE AMPLIFICATION (PHONE 00/03) setting and use buttons **4** and **5** to adjust (**fig. 88**):

– "PHONE 00" Low input sensitivity

– "PHONE 03" High input sensitivity.

Set the volume according to the car speed (SCV)

IMPORTANT For road safety reasons, this setting must not be made by the driver.

Select the SPEED-CONTROLLED VOLUME (SCVOL) setting (value from -- to 34) (**fig. 89**):

– "SCVOL 19": standard setting

– "SCVOL - -": setting off

– "SCVOL 34": top effectiveness

Adjust the setting as follows:

1) With the car at a standstill and the engine running: set required volume by means of knob **9** (**fig. 76**).

2) Press the **EXP 14** button for approximately three seconds until the message "EXPERT" appears on the display.

3) Select "SCVOL" settings by means of either button **17** or **18** .

4) For higher speeds: press either buttons **4** or **5** to set the required volume:

– button **5**: VOL + (to turn the volume up)

– button **4**: VOL - (to turn the volume down).

5) Press the **EXP 14** button for longer than two seconds.

Activating the safety code

If the message "CODE" appears on the display, the code is not on.

If the message "SAFE" appears on the display, the code is on.

IMPORTANT For more detailed instructions, see the following chapter.

SAFETY CODE

The sound system safety code is written on the CODE card (**fig. 90**). The code is not activated by the manufacturer.

If you have activated the sound system safety code: the sound system will be electronically protected if the electrical power is disconnected. It can only be used again by entering the code.

fig. 88

fig. 89

fig. 90

Is the code on?

Select the EXPERT function and press either button **17** or **18** until either the message "SAFE" or "CODE" (THEFT-PROTECTION CODE setting) appear on the display (**fig. 91**):

– SAFE = Code on

– CODE = Code off.

Activating the code

1) Select EXPERT function and press either button **17** or **18** until the message "CODE" appears on the display.

2) Activate setting by briefly pressing button **2**. The message "- - - -" will appear on the display.

fig. 91

3) Enter the code with buttons from **2** to **5** (**fig. 76**).

Button **2** is used to enter the first code digit, button **3** to enter the second digit, button **4** to enter the third digit and button **5** to enter the fourth digit.

For example, to enter the code 1 7 0 3, press button **2** briefly once only. The message 1 - - - will appear on the display.

Enter the second digit by briefly pressing button **3** seven times. The message 1 7 - - will appear on the display.

You can now enter the third digit. Press button **4** ten times. The message 1 7 0 - will appear on the display.

Finally, complete the code by pressing button **5** three times. The message 1 7 0 3 will appear on the display.

Press the button longer to decrease the digit by one unit.

4) To confirm the code: press the **EXP 14** button briefly. The message "SAFE" will appear on the display. The code is on.

To quit the EXPERT function: press the **EXP 14** button for approximately three seconds.

Deactivating the code

1) Select the EXPERT function and press buttons **17** or **18** until the message "SAFE" (THEFT-PROTECTION CODE setting) appears on the display.

2) To activate settings, press button **2** briefly. The message "1 - - - " will appear on the display.

3) Enter the code (see "Safety code") as described in "Activating the code" by pressing the buttons numbered from **2** to **5**.

4) Confirm the code by pressing the **EXP 14** button briefly until the message "CODE" appears on the display. The code is no longer active.

IMPORTANT If an incorrect code is entered, the message "SAFE" will be shown on the display. Repeat the entire procedure. Respect stand-by times between attempts (see "Stand-by times").

Resetting for use

The sound system will be electronically protected if the code is on and the electrical power is disconnected (e.g. if the battery is disconnected for servicing).

Reconnect the electrical power and proceed as follows:

1) Switch the sound system on. The message "SAFE" will appear on the display. After approximately three seconds the message "1 - - - - " will appear. "1" identifies the number of attempts to enter the code.

2) Enter the code (see "Safety code") as described in "Activating the code" by pressing the buttons numbered from **2** to **5**.

3) To confirm the code: press the **EXP 14** button briefly. The message "SAFE" will appear temporarily on the display. The sound system will start working after approximately three seconds.

IMPORTANT If an incorrect code is entered, the message "SAFE" will remain on the display and the sound system will not work. Repeat the entire procedure.

Respect stand-by times between attempts (see "Stand-by times").

Stand-by times

Specific stand-by times (between attempts) are featured to avoid entering and deactivating the code by attempts. During the stand-by time, the sound system can be switched on and off but it will not work.

Do not switch the sound system on during the stand-by times. The sound system, however, should be connected to the electrical power.

The message "SAFE" will appear on the display to indicate the stand-by time is not over.

The digit indicating the following attempt (e.g. "2 - - - -") will appear on the display when the stand-by time is over.

The following table shows the stand-by times between attempts.

After the sixth attempt, we recommend you contact a **Lancia Dealership** either to have the secret code entered or deactivated.

Ineffective attemps (on the display)	Stand-by time (approximate)
1	21 seconds
2	1.5 minutes
3	5.5 minutes
4	22 minutes
5	1.5 hours
6	6 hours
7	24 hours
8	

TAPE PLAYER

Switching the tape player on

Insert a tape cassette in the Lancia ICS panel deck. The message "TAPE A" or "TAPE B" will appear on the display.

If there is a tape in the deck, repeatedly press the **SRC 7** button until the message "TAPE" appears on the display.

Reversing the tape side

Press the **BAND 16** button briefly.

Tape side will change automatically when the end of the tape is reached (AUTOREVERSE function).

The meaning of the symbols on the display is:

"TAPE A" = upper tape side

"TAPE B" = lower tape side.

MSS function

MSS = Music Search System

This function skips or repeats a track.

The MSS function works with over three second pauses between tracks (without announcements).

Musical tracks with very low sections (e.g. classical music) are not suited for this function as the system mistakes the sections for pauses.

Switching the MSS function on

Press the **SCAN/MSS 12** button during tape playback. The message "MSS ON" will appear on the display.

MSS will start according to the tape direction.

Starting the MSS function

Press either button **17** or **18** during tape playback.

Press button **17** to skip the track being played.

Press button **18** to repeat the track being played.

Ending the MSS function before time

Press either button **17** or **18**.

Switching the MSS function off

Press the **SCAN/MSS 12** button during tape playback. The message "MSS OFF" will appear on the display.

Fast forward/rewind

Press either button **18** or **17**. The message "<< WIND" or "WIND >>" will appear on the display.

Stopping the function

Press either button **17** or **18** briefly.

Tape playback will start automatically.

Switching the tape off

Press button **23** (**fig. 76**): the tape will be ejected.

- Alternatively -

Press the **SRC 7** button. The sou-rce will change from TAPE to CD (if the CD CHANGER is fitted) or RADIO.

Source selection is sequential: RADIO, TAPE, CD.

IMPORTANT The source is switched immediately but the tape player will end the current function if the tape fast forward/rewind function is on.

General information

Tape playback will be interrupted by a traffic announcement when the TP function is on.

IMPORTANT You can interrupt the announcement being broadcast without altering the possibility of receiving other announcements by briefly pressing the **TP/AF 11** button.

CD PLAYER

The sound system is set up to operate a compatible CD player (available from Lineaccessori Lancia).

Contact a Lancia Dealership exclusively for fitting and connecting the CD player.

The Lineaccessori Lancia CD player is equipped with a magazine (changer) which can hold up to six CDs.

Multimedia CDs contain sound and data tracks. Playing these CDs can cause noise loud enough to jeopardise road safety and damage final system stages and speakers.

Filling the magazine

The magazine contains six trays for one CD each.

To playback a CD, extract a tray from the magazine (**fig. 92**) and insert a CD (**fig. 93**).

Make sure the CD label is facing the right way, i.e. towards the tray. If not, the player will not work.

The player cannot be used to play 8 cm CDs unless a specific adapter, which can be purchased at HI-FI stores, is fitted.

Inserting the magazine in the CD player

Proceed as follows:

– Move the sliding flap **A** (**fig. 94**) completely to the right until it locks.

– Check that switch **B** is in position "**1**".

fig. 93

– Insert the magazine **C** (**fig. 95**) in the CD player with the labelled side (see arrow) facing upwards.

– Close the sliding flap **D** (**fig. 96**) after inserting the magazine to avoid grit and dust from getting inside the player.

Removing the magazine from the CD player

Proceed as follows:

– Move the sliding flap **A** (**fig. 94**) completely to the right until it locks.

– Press the eject button **E** (**fig. 97**) on the CD player.

fig. 92

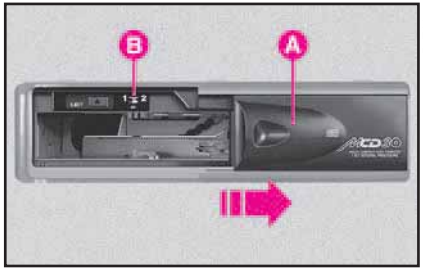


fig. 94

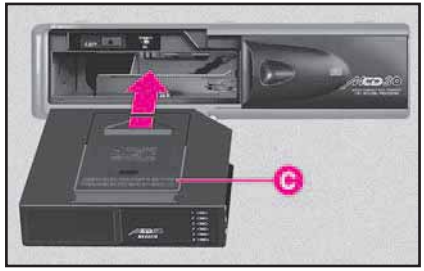


fig. 95

Removing the CDs from the magazine

Remove the CDs in order after removing the respective supports from the magazine.

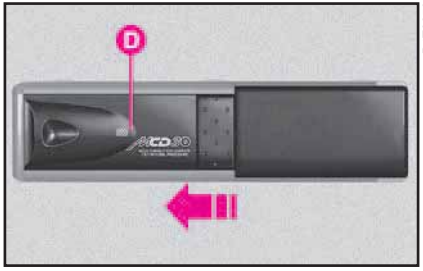


fig. 96

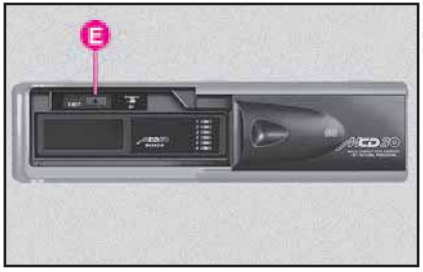


fig. 97

CD PLAYER OPERATION

Seleting the CD CHANGER source

Briefly and repeatedly press **SRC 7** button until the message "CD" appears on the display.

Selecting a CD

Briefly and repeatedly press button **5** or **6** until the required CD number appears on the display.

5: previous CD

6: next CD.

Selecting or repeating a track

Briefly and repeatedly press either button **17** or **18** until the required track number appears on the display.

17: next track

18: either repeats the track being played back or plays the previous track.

Playing each track on the selected CD for ten seconds (SCAN function)

Press the **SCAN/MSS 12** button briefly. The message "SCAN ON" will appear briefly on the display.

To stop the function, press the **SCAN/MSS 12** button briefly. The message "SCAN OFF" will appear on the display briefly.

Fast forward/backward (TRACK FAST)

To fast play a track at low volume:

– FORWARD: press button **17** and hold it pressed.

– BACKWARDS: press button **18** and hold it pressed.

Repeating a track (TRACK REPEAT)

To playback a track repeatedly: press button **1**. The message "TRK ON" will appear on the display.

A different track can however be selected with the TRACK REPEAT function.

To stop the function, press button **1**. The message "TRK OFF" will appear on the display.

Repeating a CD (REPEAT)

To play the current CD repeatedly: press button **2**. The message "RPT CD" will appear on the display.

A different CD can however be selected with this function.

To stop the function, press button **2**. The message "RPT MAG" will appear on the display.

Playing the tracks in random order (TRACK RANDOM)

To play the tracks in random order: press button **3**. The message "RND ON" will appear on the display. The selected CD tracks will be played in random order.

To end random track playback, press button **3**. The message "RND OFF" will appear on the display.

IMPORTANT The TRACK RANDOM function cannot be combined with the TRACK REPEAT and REPEAT functions.

Ending CD operation

Press the **SRC 7** button to listen to the radio.

IMPORTANT Press the **TP/AF 11** button briefly to interrupt the announcement in progress without inhibiting the reception of other announcements.

CD status display

Briefly press the **EXP 14** button. A message will appear on the display indicating if a special function is on (e.g. "TRK ON").

CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM

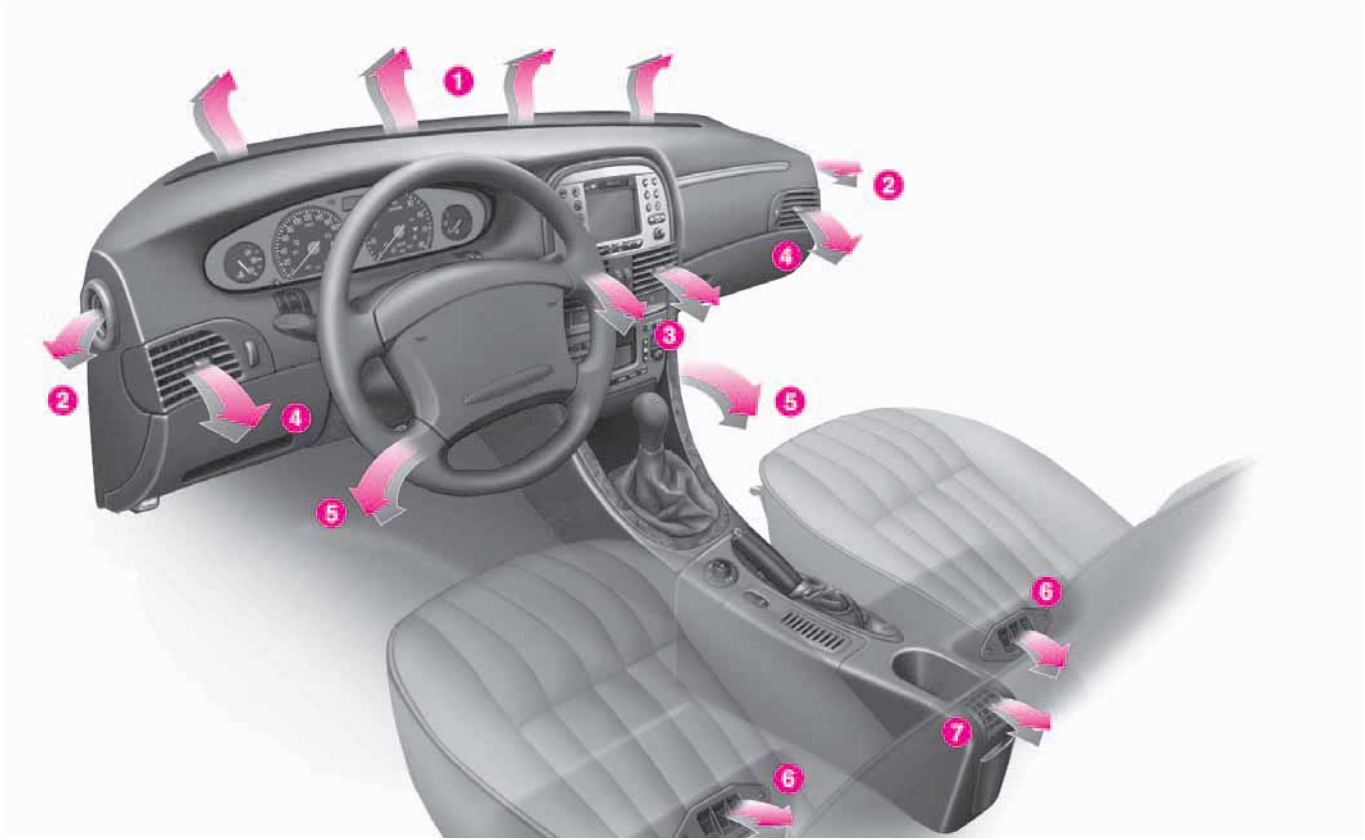


fig. 98

P4T0812

1 - Windscreen defrosting and demisting vents

2 - Front side windows defrosting and demisting vents

3 - Central directional and adjustable vents

4 - Side directional and adjustable vents

5 - Front footwell air vents

6 - Rear footwell air vents

7 - Rear directional and adjustable vents

The passenger compartment climate can be controlled (i.e. heating, ventilation and cooling, where fitted) as follows:

– manually, by selecting the functions by means of the control panel buttons;

– automatically, by means of the system electronic control unit.

The air is let into the passenger compartment through a set of vents on the dashboard, on the front door panels, on the central unit and on the floor as shown in (**fig. 98**).

DIRECTIONAL AND ADJUSTABLE VENTS (fig. 99-100-101)

The vents can be turned upwards or downwards and towards the left and the right with control **A**.

The amount of air is adjusted with control **B**.

= all open

= all closed.

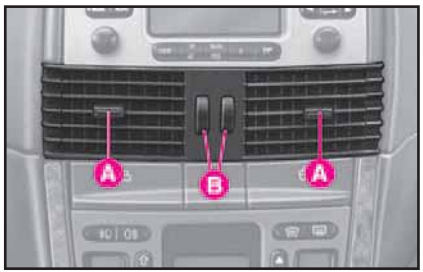


fig. 99

Fixed vents **C** (**fig. 100**) for defrosting or demisting the front side windows are located in the front door panels.

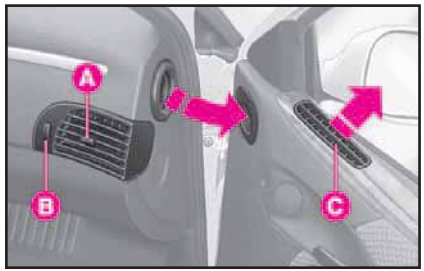


fig. 100

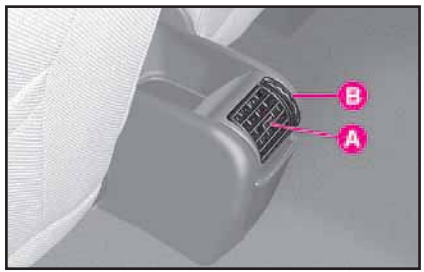


fig. 101

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM: HEATING, VENTILATION AND COOLING

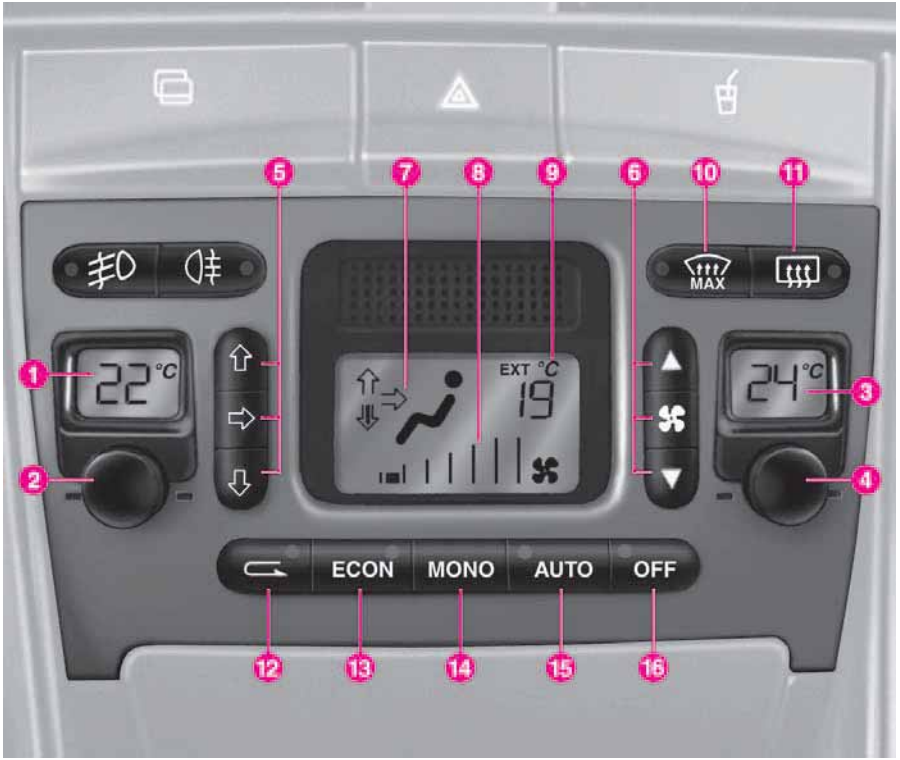


fig. 102

1 - Set internal temperature display (driver's side).

2 - Knob for adjusting internal temperature (driver's side).

3 - Set internal temperature display (passenger's side).

4 - Knob for adjusting internal temperature (passenger's side).

5 - Buttons for selecting air distribution.

6 - Buttons for adjusting fan speed.

7 - Set air distribution.

8 - Set fan speed

9 - Outside temperature (in degrees centigrade)

10 - Button for switching on/off maximum defrosting/demisting of windscreen and front side windows, heated rear window and external rearview mirrors.

11 - Button for switching on/off the heated rear window and the external rearview mirror defroster.

12 - Button for manual switching on/off the air recirculation function.

13 - Button for switching on/off the climate control system compressor (where fitted).

14 - Button for aligning the set temperatures on passenger and driver's side.

15 - Button for selecting automatic system operation.

16 - Button for switching the system off.

The cooling system (where fitted) uses R134a refrigerating fluid as it will not pollute the environment if it accidentally leaks. Under no circumstances should other fluids be used which are incompatible with the system components.

GENERAL

The car is equipped with a double climate control system governed by an electronic control unit which separately adjusts the temperature on driver's and passenger's side.

For optimal control of temperature in the two areas of the passenger compartment, the system is equipped with a double sun ray sensor.

The system features a pollution sensor which can automatically switch the air recirculation function on to reduce the unpleasant effects of polluted air in cities, queues, tunnels and when the windscreen washer is operated (with the characteristic smell of alcohol).

The air quality is controlled by an active carbon dust/pollen filter which has the double function of mechanically filtering the particles dispersed in the air and attenuating the peak accumulation of certain pollutants.

The climate control system automatically controls and adjusts the following parameters and functions:

– temperature of air let into the passenger compartment (separately on driver's and passenger's side)

– fan speed (continuous variation)

– air distribution

– recirculation on/off

– climate control system compressor on/off (where fitted).

The amount of air let into the passenger compartment does not depend on the speed of the car. It is in fact adjusted by an electronically controlled fan.

The following settings can be adjusted manually:

– fan speed (continuous variation)

– air distribution

– recirculation on/off

– climate control system compressor on/off (where fitted).

IMPORTANT The manual settings have priority over the automatic settings until the user returns the system to automatic control. The manual settings will be stored when the engine is stopped and represented at the following start-up.

The functions which cannot be set manually are always automatic.

The air let into the passenger compartment is always controlled automatically (unless the system is off) according to the temperatures set on the driver's and passenger's displays.

On certain versions (where provided), the system is completed by a sensor fog fitted behind the driving mirror and able to monitor a preset area relevant to windscreen internal surface and to operate the system automatically to prevent or to reduce fogging through the following operations: air recirculation opening, compressor activation, air distribution to windscreen, fan speed sufficient for defogging and MAX-DEF function activation in case of hard fogging.

To guarantee sensor fog proper operation, license tag, parking disc or labels shall not be stuck on the "monitoring" area between sensor and windscreen. Keep sensor and windscreen clean, preventing any accumulation of dust or other substances.

Active carbon dust/pollen filter

The filter has the specific capacity of combining a mechanical air cleaning action and an electrostatic effect so that the air let into the passenger compartment is purified from particles such as dust, pollen, etc.

In addition to this function, the filter efficaciously reduces the concentration of pollutants thanks to a layer of active carbon inside the filter.

The filtering action is carried out on the air let in from outside (recirculation off).

Have the filter checked at least once a year at a **Lancia Dealership**, ideally at the beginning of summer.

You should have the filter checked and if required replaced more frequently if the car is mainly used in polluted or dusty areas.

The efficacy of the climate control system may be considerably reduced if the filter is not replaced.

HOW TO USE THE CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM

The system can be switched on the various ways. We recommend starting by pressing the **AUTO** button and setting the required temperatures on the display.

In this way, the system will start working fully automatically to reach the required temperature as soon as possible. It will maintain the temperature by adjusting the amount and distribution pattern of the air let into the passenger compartment and manage the recirculation function and the climate control system compressor (where fitted).

When the system is working automatically, the only possible manual functions are:

– **MONO**, to align the passenger's side temperature to the driver's side temperature.

– **ECON**, to switch the climate control compressor off (where fitted)

– air recirculation function, to switch the function on and off constantly

– MAX for faster window demisting/defrosting

– for demisting/defrosting the heated rear window and the external rearview mirrors.

The temperature settings can be changed at any time during automatic system operation. The system will automatically adjust to the new request.

Furthermore, the fan speed and the air distribution pattern can be changed by means of the specific buttons. In this way, the functions pass from automatic to manual control until the **AUTO** button is pressed.

With one or more functions manually on, the air temperature let into the passenger compartment is automatically managed by the system unless the climate control system compressor is off (where fitted). In this condition, in fact, the air let into the passenger compartment cannot have a lower temperature than that of the external air.

CONTROLS (fig. 102)

Knob for adjusting air temperature (2, 4 - fig. 102)

Turn the knobs towards the right or towards the left to raise or lower the air temperature required respectively in the left-hand area (knob **2**) and in the right-hand area (knob **4**) of the passenger compartment. The set temperatures are shown on the displays **1** and **3** over the respective knobs.

Press button **14** (**MONO**) to automatically align the passenger's side temperature to the temperature on driver's side. Consequently, the temperature in the two areas can be set simply by turning the knob on driver's side **2**. This function is provided to facilitate adjusting the temperature in the passenger compartment when only the driver is present.

The separate operation of the set temperatures is automatically reset when knob **4** is turned.

Turn the knobs fully to the right or to the left to the end positions **HI** and **LO** to obtain maximum heating or cooling, respectively:

– **HI** function (maximum heating): this is switched on by setting a temperature higher than 32°C on the display. It can be independently switched on from driver's side or from passenger's side or from both sides (also by selecting the **MONO** function). This function can be switched on to speed up heating in the passenger compartment by exploiting the system potential to the maximum. The function employs the maximum coolant temperature while the air distribution and fan speed are set by the system according to environmental conditions. In particular, if the coolant temperature is not sufficient, the function does not switch the fan on at top speed to limit letting into air which is not adequately warm. All the manually settings can be adjusted when the function is on. To switch the function off, simply set the temperature on the display to a value lower than 32°C.

– **LO** function (maximum cooling): this is automatically switched on by setting a temperature lower than 18°C on the display. It can be independently switched on from driver's side or from passenger's side or from both sides (also by selecting the **MONO** function). This function can be switched on to speed up cooling the passenger compartment by exploiting the system potential to the maximum. The function cuts out the heater and switches the air recirculation and the climate control compressor (where fitted) on. The air distribution and the fan speed are selected according to the environmental conditions. All the manually settings can be adjusted when the function is on. To switch the function off, simply set the temperature on the display to a value higher than 18°C.

Buttons for adjusting fan speed (6 - fig. 102)

Press the upper or lower button to increase or decrease the fan speed, respectively, so to adjust the amount of air let into the passenger compartment while keeping the required temperature constant.

The fan speed is indicated by the bars which light up on the display **8**. Repeatedly press the upper button to switch the fan on at top speed (all bars on). Repeatedly press the lower button to switch off the fan (no bars on).

IMPORTANT In versions with cooling system (where fitted), the fan can only be switched off when the climate control system compressor is switched off with the **ECON** button.

Press the **AUTO** button to restore automatic fan speed control after a manual setting.

Buttons for adjusting air distribution (5 - fig. 102)

Press buttons **5** to manually select one of the five possible air distribution patterns in the passenger compartment:

Air flow to central and side dashboard vents and the rear vent.

Air flow shared between foot-well vents (warmer air) and central and side dashboard vents and the rear vent (cooler air).

This air distribution pattern is particularly useful in the middle seasons (spring and autumn) when it is sunny.

Air flow to the front and rear footwells.

The air distribution pattern, due to the natural tendency of heat to move upwards, allows to heat the passenger compartment up as fast as possible. Furthermore, it offers a prompt feeling of warmth to the coolest parts of the body.

Air flow shared between the footwell vents and the windscreen and front side window defrosting/demi-sting vents.

This air distribution pattern ensures a good heating of the passenger compartment and prevents possible misting up.

Air flow to windscreen and front side window vents for demisting or defrosting the windows.

IMPORTANT The system will not accept different combinations. If an air distribution pattern will cannot be used is selected only the main function of the pressed button will be started.

The set air distribution pattern is shown on display **7**.

When a combined function is set, only the main function of the button pressed will be switched on. If the button corresponding to a function which is already on is pressed, the function will continue to work.

Press the **AUTO** button to restore air distribution control after a manual setting.

AUTO button (automatic operation) (15 - fig. 102)

Press the **AUTO** button: the system will automatically control the air amount and distribution pattern in the passenger compartment and cancel all the previously made settings. The LED on the button will come on.

When the LED on the **AUTO** button is off, one or more manual settings have been made. Consequently, either the automatic control is not complete (with the exception of the temperature control function which is always automatic) or the system is off (LED on the **OFF** button will be on in this case).

ECON button (climate control system compressor off) (where fitted) (13 - fig. 102)

Press the **ECON** button to switch the climate control system compressor off. The LED on the button will come on.

The LED on the **AUTO** button will go out and the automatic recirculation function will be switched off (to prevent possible misting up) when the climate control system compressor is switched off.

IMPORTANT Air at a temperature lower than that of the outside air cannot be let in to the passenger compartment when the compressor is off. Furthermore, in particular environmental conditions, the windows could mist up fast because the air is no longer dehumidified.

The setting will be stored when the engine is stopped. Either press the **ECON** button again or press the **AUTO** button to reset automatic control of the compressor (in the latter case, the manual settings will be cancelled). The LED on the **ECON** button will go out.

The automatic compressor is automatically switched on when the air recirculation function is switched on automatically (to prevent the windows from misting up).

The air let into the passenger compartment cannot be cooled when the compressor is off. Consequently:

– if the outside temperature is lower than the set temperature, the system works normally and can reach and maintain the set temperature also when the compressor is off.

– if the outside temperature is higher than the set temperature, the system cannot reach the required temperature. This will be signalled by flashing the external temperature value on display **1** and **3**.

MONO button (set temperature alignment) (14 - fig. 102)

Press the **MONO** button to automatically align the passenger's side temperature to the temperature on driver's side. Consequently, the temperature in the two areas can be set simply by turning the knob on driver's side **2**. This function is provided to facilitate adjusting the temperature in the passenger compartment when only the driver is present.

The separate set temperature function will be automatically reset when the passenger turns knob **4**.

Air recirculation on/off button (12 - fig. 102)

The air recirculation function is controlled according to three strategies:

– automatic operation (LED on button off)

– forced ventilation on (recirculation always on) - the green LED on the button will come on

– forced ventilation off (recirculation always off, air taken in from the outside) - the amber LED on the button will come on

The three conditions are obtained by pressing the air recirculation button (**12**) in sequence.

The air recirculation button LED will stay off when the recirculation function is automatically controlled by the system (consequently, the actual on/off status of the recirculation function will not be displayed).

During automatic operation, the recirculation function is automatically switched on when the pollution sensor detects the presence of polluted air, e.g. in cities, queues, tunnels and during windscreen operation (due to the characteristic smell of alcohol).

When the recirculation function is controlled manually (green LED = recirculation on; amber LED = external air taken in), the LED on the auto button will come on if all the other functions (air distribution, air flow, etc.) are controlled automatically by the system. In the same way, recirculation will be controlled by the user when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

IMPORTANT The air recirculation function will allow, according to the system operation (i.e. heating or cooling) to reach the required conditions faster. We recommend not turning this function on manually on rainy and/or cold days as this will considerably increase window misting, especially if there are many people on board.

The climate control system compressor cannot work when the outside temperature is lower than approximately 5°C. In these conditions, the system automatically opens the air recirculation (amber LED on). You can switch recirculation back to automatic (LED off) or override it closed (green LED on). You are advised not to use this function since the windows could mist up rapidly when the outside temperature is low.

Button for fast windscreen demisting/defrosting (10 - fig. 102)

Press this button: the climate control system will automatically (for approximately 180 seconds) switch on all the functions required for fast windscreen and side window demisting/defrosting regardless of the system operation conditions, that is:

– climate control system compressor on (where fitted)

– air recirculation off (if on)

– maximum air temperature (**HI**) on both displays

– maximum fan speed

– air flow directed to the windscreen and front side window vents

– heated rear window and external rearview mirrors on.

The LED on the heated rear window button and the amber LED on the air recirculation button will come on when the fast demisting/defrosting function is on. The **ECON**, **AUTO** and **OFF** LEDS, on the other hand, will go out.

IMPORTANT If the engine is not adequately warm, the fan will not immediately be started at top speed to limit letting cold air into the passenger compartment for demisting the windows.

Only the fan speed can be adjusted and the heated rear window can be switched off when the fast demisting/defrosting function is on.

Press the fast demisting/defrosting button again or the air circulation button, **ECON**, **AUTO** or **OFF** to switch the fast demisting/defrosting function off and reset the previous system operation conditions as well as the last set function.

On certain versions the system is completed by a sensor fog fitted behind the driving mirror and able to monitor a section of the windscreen internal surface and to operate the system automatically to prevent or to remove inside fogging from windscreen and front side windows through the following operations: air recirculation opening, compressor activation, air distribution to windscreen, fan speed sufficient for defogging and MAX-DEF function activation in case of hard fogging.

To guarantee sensor fog proper operation, license tag, parking disc or labels shall not be stuck on the "monitoring" area between sensor and windscreen. Keep sensor and windscreen clean, preventing any accumulation of dust or other substances.

IMPORTANT Defogging procedure is activated by turning the ignition key to **MAR** or depressing the **AUTO** button. This procedure can be deactivated by depressing the following buttons: compressor, air recirculation, distribution, air flow. This operation inhibits the sensor signal as long as the **AUTO** button is pressed again or, under some conditions, the ignition key is turned to **MAR** again.

Button for demisting/defrosting the heated rear window and external rearview mirrors (11 - fig. 102)

Press this button to switch on the heated rear window and external rearview mirror demisting/defrosting function. The LED on the button will come on.

The device will be automatically switched off after ten minutes.

Press the button again or stop the engine to switch the function off. It will not start up automatically when the engine is started again.

IMPORTANT Do not apply stickers on the electrical filaments inside the heated rear window to prevent damage.

OFF button (system off) (16 - fig. 102)

Press the **OFF** button to switch the climate control system off. The LED on the button will come on.

The climate control system conditions when the system is off are:

– air recirculation, **ECON** and **AUTO** button LEDs off

– central display off, except for the outside air temperature value

– air recirculation on, thus isolating the passenger compartment

– climate control system compressor (where fitted) off

– fan off.

The heated rear window can be switched on and off normally when the system is off.

IMPORTANT The windows may mist up fast when the climate control system is off and in certain environmental conditions.

The climate control system electronic control unit stores the system settings made before the system was switched off and restores them as soon as a button is pressed (with the exception of the heated rear window button). The function which the button corresponds to will be switched on, if it was off when the system was switched off. It will be kept if, on the other hand, it was on when the system was switched off.

Press the **OFF** button again to switch the climate control system back on without changing the previous settings.

Press the **AUTO** button to switch the climate control system back on and ensure a totally automatic control.

ICE BUZZER

The climate control system is equipped with a buzzer which sounds (three consecutive buzzes) when the outside temperature reach or drops below 3°C to warn the driver of possible ice.

The buzzer will sound only once unless the outside temperature exceeds 7°C. This will reactivate the system warning (after approximately 15 minutes). In this case, if the outside temperature reaches or drops below 3°C again, the buzzer will be sounded.

SUPPLEMENTARY HEATER

(jtd versions only - where fitted)

The supplementary heater complements engine coolant heating immediately after start up and when travelling to reach the optional engine operation temperature and to heat the passenger compartment faster.

The electrical device is fully automatic and will only work when the engine is running.

IMPORTANT The supplementary heater will be switched on when the outside temperature is lower than 15°C and the engine coolant temperature is lower than 65°C.

To prevent excessive intake of battery current, the heater operation at the various power percentages is subjected to the power voltage measured by the control unit.

IMPORTANT The operation of the heater according to engine coolant temperature consequently can be cut out or reduced according to the battery voltage.

At the end of the operation cycle developed according to the temperature of the engine coolant and the battery voltage, the supplementary heater is automatically switched off. It will not come on again until the following engine start-up, even if the coolant temperature drops to under 65°C.

STEERING COLUMN STALKS

LEFT-HAND STALK

This stalk groups the outside light and the direction indicator controls. The outside lights will only light up when the ignition key is at **MAR**.

When the outside lights are turned on, the instrument panel and the various controls located on the dashboard light up.

Side and taillights (fig. 103)

These come on when you turn ring **A** from O to ☼. Instrument panel indicator light ≡D◊≡ will light up.

fig. 103

Dipped beam headlights (fig. 103)

These come on when you turn ring **A** from ☼ to ≡D.

Main beam headlights (fig. 104)

These come on when you turn the ring to ≡D pushing the stalk forwards towards the dashboard. Instrument panel warning light ≡D will come on.

To return to dipped beams, pull the stalk back towards the steering wheel.

Direction indicators (fig. 105)

Move the stalk as follows:

up - to switch on the right-hand indicators

down - to switch on the left-hand indicators.

Instrument panel warning light ⇦ or ⇨ will flash.

The direction indicators automatically return to the neutral position when the car straightens up. If you want the indicator to flash briefly to show that you are about to change lane, move the stalk up or down without clicking into position. When you let it go it will return to its original position.

To flash the lights (fig. 106)

Pull the stalk towards the steering wheel (temporary position). Instrument panel warning light ≡D will come on.

IMPORTANT This operation will flash the main beam headlights. Follow the Highway Code to prevent being fined.

fig. 104

fig. 105

fig. 106

RIGHT-HAND STALK

This stalk groups together all the washer/wiper controls.

Windscreen wiper/washer (fig. 107)

This device can only work when the ignition key is at **MAR**.

0 - Windscreen wiper off.

1 - Flick wipe. In this position, turn knob **A** to set the following (with the exception of versions with rain sensor):

■ = Slow flick

■■ = Medium flick

■■■ = Medium-fast flick

■■■■ = Fast flick.

In versions with rain sensor, turn ring **A** to set the sensitivity level:

AUTO = automatic sensitivity setting

■ = low sensitivity

■■ = medium sensitivity

■■■ = high sensitivity

2 - Slow continuous wipe

3 - Fast continuous wipe

4 - Temporary fast function: when you release the stalk it returns to position **0** and automatically turns the windscreen wiper off.

Windscreen washer

When you pull the lever towards the steering wheel (**fig. 108**) a jet of liquid shoots out from the windscreen washer and the windscreen wiper will be operated for a few seconds and, after a pause of approximately five seconds, will flick once again. If on the other hand the windscreen wiper is working it will fast flick several times.

Headlight washer (where fitted)

Pulling the stalk towards the steering wheel (**fig. 108**) will also operate the headlight washers providing that the dipped or main beam headlights are on (**fig. 109**).

fig. 107

fig. 108

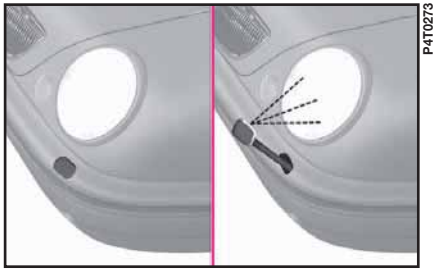


fig. 109

Rain sensor (where fitted)

The rain sensor is an electronic device combined with the windscreen wiper which automatically suits the flick frequency during operation to the intensity of rain.

All the functions controlled with the right-hand stalk (i.e. on/off, continuous slow and fast wipe, temporary fast wipe, windscreen washer and headlight washer) are unvaried.

The rain sensor is automatically switched on when the stalk is taken to position **1** (**fig. 107**) and has the purpose of adjusting the range of operation from stationary (no flick) when the windscreen is dry to second continuous speed (continuous fast wipe) when the rain is heavy.

When the windscreen washer is operated and the rain sensor is on (by taking the stalk to position **1**), the normal washing cycle is carried out after which the rain sensor returns to normal automatic operation.

The rain sensor is switched off when the key is turned to **STOP**. It will not come on again at the following engine start-up (key at **MAR**) if the stalk is at position **1**.

Turn ring **A** (**fig. 107**) to set the rain sensor sensitivity level:

AUTO = automatic sensitivity setting

■ = low sensitivity

■■ = medium sensitivity

■■■ = high sensitivity.

CONTROLS

HAZARD LIGHTS (fig. 110)

These come on when switch **A** is pressed regardless of the position of the ignition key.

When these lights are on, the switch and the ⇦⇨ warning lights on the instrument panel flash.

Press the switch again to turn the lights off.

IMPORTANT The use of the hazard warning lights is governed by the traffic regulations of the country where the car is being driven. These laws should be complied with.

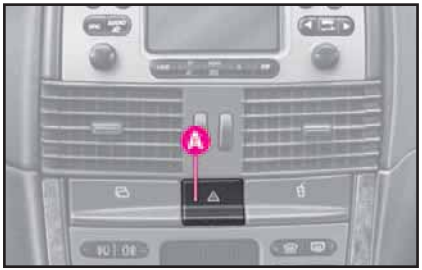


fig. 110

FRONT FOG LIGHTS (fig. 111)

Press button **A** to switch the fog lights on (only when the outside lights are on).

The LED on the button will come on.

The fog lights will be automatically switched off when the ignition key is turned to **STOP** and will not come on again when the engine is started unless button **A** is pressed.

Press the button to switch the lights off.

IMPORTANT The use of fog lights is governed by the Highway Code. The fog light system complies with EEC/ECE standards.

REAR FOG LIGHT (fig. 112)

This light is switched on by pressing button **A** when the dipped beam headlights and/or front fog lights are on.

The LED on the button will come on.

The rear fog light will automatically be switched off when the engine is stopped or when switching from dipped beam headlights and/or front fog lights to side/taillights.

Press the button again to switch the light on after starting the engine again or switching to dipped beam headlights in the fog.

You will need to press the button to switch the rear fog light on again after stopping the engine or switching the dipped beam headlights on.

IMPORTANT The rear fog light may annoy the drivers following you when visibility is good. Consequently, use the light only when required.

IMPORTANT Follow the local prescriptions governing the use of rear fog lights. The rear fog light system complies with EEC/ECE standards.

INSTRUMENT DIMMER (fig. 113)

Turn ring **A** upwards or downward when the outside lights are on to respectively increase or decrease instrument brightness.

fig. 111

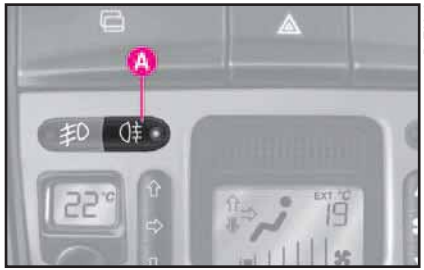


fig. 112

fig. 113

HEATED REAR WINDOW (fig. 114)

Press button **A** to switch the heated rear window on. The LED on the button will come on.

The device will be automatically switched off after ten minutes.

The electrical rearview mirror demister will also be switched on automatically.

fig. 114

FUEL CUT-OFF SWITCH (fig. 115)

This is a safety cut-off switch which comes into operation in the case of an accident to block the supply of fuel thereby stopping the engine. It also prevents spilling fuel if the lines are broken in the accident.

The safety switch will operate - in the event of an impact - the central door locking system (if locked) to allow opening the doors from the outside.

After the crash, remember to turn the ignition key to **STOP** to prevent the battery running down.

fig. 115

If, after an accident, you can smell petrol or see that the fuel feed system is leaking, to avoid the risk of fire, do not reset the switch.

If you cannot see any fuel leaks and the car is in a fit state to continue its journey, press button **A** to reactivate the fuel supply system.

HANDBRAKE (fig. 116)

The handbrake lever is located between the two front seats.

Pull the handbrake lever upwards until the car cannot be moved. Four or five clicks are generally enough when the car is on level ground while nine or ten may be required if the car is on a steep slope or laden.

IMPORTANT If this is not the case, take the car to a **Lancia Dealership** to have the handbrake adjusted.

When the handbrake lever is pulled up and the ignition key is at **MAR** the panel warning light (!) will come on.

To release the handbrake:

1) Slightly lift the handbrake and press release button **A**.

2) Keep the button pressed in and lower the lever. Warning light (!) will go out.

3) To prevent accidental movement of the car, this procedure should be carried out with the brake pedal pressed down.

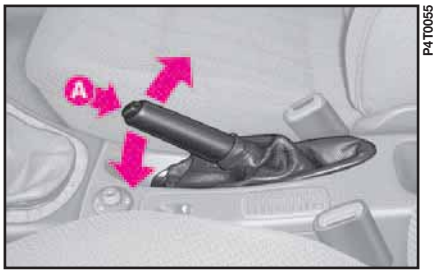


fig. 116

MANUAL GEARBOX

To engage the gears, press down the clutch and put the gear lever into one of the positions shown in the diagram in **fig. 117** (the diagram is also on the gear lever knob).

To engage reverse (**R**): wait for the car to come to a standstill and from neutral position shift the lever to the right and then back.

In some versions, lift ring **A** (**fig. 117**) under the knob with the fingers of the hand operating the lever. Release the ring after engaging reverse. You do not need to lift the ring to shift to another gear from reverse.

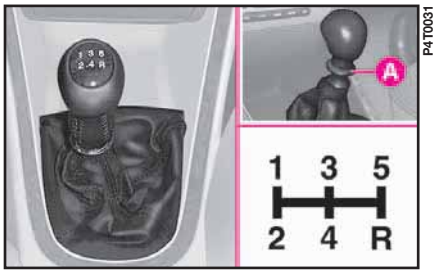


fig. 117

To change gear properly you must push the clutch pedal fully down. It is therefore essential that there is nothing under the pedals: make sure mats are lying flat and do not get in the way of the pedals. Make sure mats are lying flat and do not get in the way of the pedals.

Reverse can only be engaged when the car is at a standstill. Wait for two seconds or longer with the clutch pedal fully pressed before engaging reverse when the engine is running to prevent scraping and damaging the gears.

Do not drive with your hand resting on the gear stick as the force exerted, even if only slight, could lead to premature wearing of the gearbox internal components.

CRUISE CONTROL (where fitted))

GENERAL

The electronic cruise control allows to drive your car at the required speed without pressing the accelerator pedal. This reduces fatigue when driving on motorways because the set speed is automatically maintained.

IMPORTANT The device can only be set to speeds exceeding 30 km/h.

fig. 118

The cruise control must only be used when the traffic and road conditions allow to keep a constant speed in total safety for an adequately long time.

The device is automatically switched off when:

– the brake pedal is pressed

– the clutch pedal is pressed.

CONTROLS (fig. 118)

The cruise control is operated by means of switch **A**, ring **B** and button **C**.

Switch **A** has two position:

– **OFF**: in this position, the device is off;

– **ON**: this is the normal device operating position. The **CRUISE** warning light **D** will come on when the device starts governing the engine.

Ring **B** is used to set and maintain the car speed or decrease the set speed.

Turn ring **B** to position (**+**) to set the speed reached or to increase the stored speed.

Turn ring **B** to position (**–**) to decrease the stored speed.

The speed will be increased or decreased by approximately 1 km/h each time ring **B** is operated. Hold the ring turned to set the speed continuously. The new set speed will be automatically kept.

Button **C** allows to reset the stored value.

IMPORTANT Turn the ignition key to **STOP** or switch **A** to **OFF** to delete the stored speed and switch the system off.

Storing the speed

Move switch **A** to **ON** and take the car to the required speed normally. Turn ring **B** to (+) for all least three seconds and release it. The car speed will be stored and you can now release your foot from the accelerator.

The car will continue at constant speed until one of the following events occur:

– the brake pedal is pressed

– the clutch pedal is pressed.

IMPORTANT If required (e.g. for overtaking) you can accelerate simply by pressing the accelerator. The car will return to the previously set speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

Resetting the stored speed

To reset the stored speed after switching the device off, e.g. by pressing the brake or the clutch pedal:

– accelerate progressively to reach a speed which is close to the previously set speed

– engage the gear which was engaged when the speed was set (4th or 5th gear)

– press button **C**.

Increasing the stored speed

The stored speed can be increased in two ways:

– by pressing the accelerator pedal and storing the new speed (turning ring **B** for longer than three seconds);

or

– by temporarily turning ring **B** to (+): each turn of the ring will correspond to a small speed increase (approximately 1 kph) while a continuous pressure will correspond to a continuous increase of speed. Release ring **B**: the new speed will automatically be stored.

Reducing the stored speed

The stored speed can be decreased in two ways:

– by switching the device off (e.g. by pressing the brake pedal) and then storing the new speed (turning ring **B** to (**+**) for longer than three seconds);

or

– by turning ring **B** to (**–**) until the new speed is reached. The new speed will automatically be stored.

Deleting the stored speed

The stored speed is automatically deleted when:

– the engine is stopped

or

– switch **A** is turned to **OFF**.

When driving with the cruise control, do not shift the gear lever to neutral. You should only switch the cruise control on when the traffic and road conditions allow this in complete safety, i.e. straight and dry roads, motorways, fast moving traffic and smooth road surface. Do not use the device is cities or in heavy traffic.

The cruise control can be switched on at speeds higher than 30 km/h. The device can only be switched on in 4th or 5th gear, according to car speed. When travelling down- hill the speed may increase slightly with respect to the stored value according to the change in engine load.

If the device is faulty or does not work, turn switch A off and contact a Lancia Dealership after checking the protection fuse.

Switch A can be left on without damaging the device. The device should however be switched off when not in use by turning switch A off to prevent accidentally storing speeds.

INTERIOR EQUIPMENT

INTERIOR LIGHTS

Front ceiling light (fig. 119)

The ceiling light includes two courtesy lights and the respective switch.

Both lights will come on when a door is opened along with the rear ceiling lights when the switch **A** is pressed to the left (position **0 - AUTO**).

The lights will stay on for approximately seven seconds or until the ignition key is turned to **MAR** (with the doors closed) to facilitate starting the car.

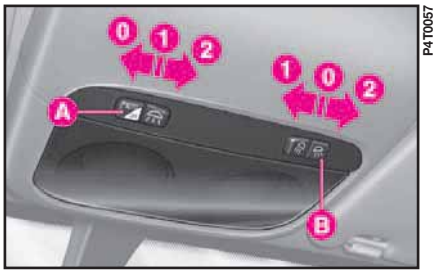


fig. 119

The lights will go out when the ignition switch is turned to **MAR** (doors closed).

Switch **A** in central position **1**: the lights will not come on (**OFF** position).

Press switch **A** to the right (position **2**): both light will come on regardless of the doors.

Switch **B** is will switch the lights on separately.

Press switch **B** to the left (position **1**) to switch on the left-hand light. Press the switch to the right (position **2**) to switch on the right-hand light.

The lights will not come on when switch **B** is in central position **0**.

IMPORTANT Before getting out of the car, make sure that the switch **A** is pressed to the left and switch **B** is in central position. In this way, the ceiling lights will then go out when the doors are closed and you will not drain the battery.

The lights will go out automatically after a few seconds if a door is left open. Simply open a door to switch the lights on again.

Courtesy lights (fig. 120)

Lower the sun visors to access the courtesy lights on the roof.

The courtesy lights allow to use the courtesy mirrors in the dark.

Press lens **A** at the indent to switch the lights on and off with the key at **MAR** .

fig. 120

Rear ceiling lamps (fig. 121)

The ceiling lamps light on/off gradually when opening/closing a door.

Manual on/off switching is obtained by pressing lens **A** in the point indicated by the arrows.

GLOVE COMPARTMENT (fig. 122-123)

According to versions, the glove compartment located in the dashboard can be fitted with a lock.

Versions with lock:

– to lock/unlock, use the ignition key;

– to open, turn the ignition key to position **1**, then pull handle **A**.

– to lock, close the lid and turn the key to position **2**.

Versions without lock:

– to open, simply pull handle **A**.

For both versions, a courtesy light **B** will come on when the compartment, if any, is opened.

Never drive with the glove compartment flap open: it could injure the person sitting in the passenger seat in the event of an accident.

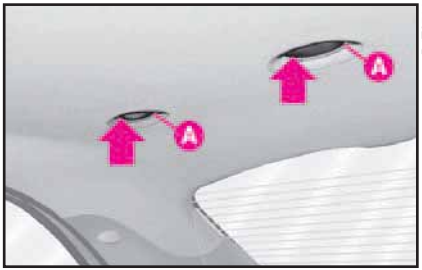


fig. 121

fig. 122

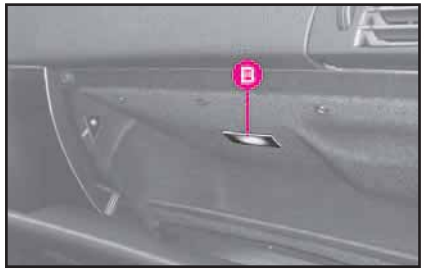


fig. 123

FRONT ASHTRAY AND CIGAR LIGHTER (fig. 124-125)

The ashtray and cigar lighter are protected by a single flap. Press the flap at point **A** to open.

Press button **B** to work the cigar lighter. After approximately 15 seconds it will return to its initial position and be ready for use.

IMPORTANT The cigar lighter will only work when the ignition key is at **MAR**.

Make sure that the cigar lighter does in fact pop out after it has been pushed in.

The cigar lighter gets very hot. Be careful how you handle it and make sure it is not used by children: danger of fire or burns.

Remove tray **C** to empty the ashtray.

REAR ASHTRAY (fig. 126)

An ashtray for rear seats is located in the rear part of the central unit.

Pull the ashtray out to use it.

To remove the ashtray, press the middle clip **A** and pull the ashtray out.

To put it back, insert the base of the ashtray, press the middle clip and push it into its housing.

fig. 124

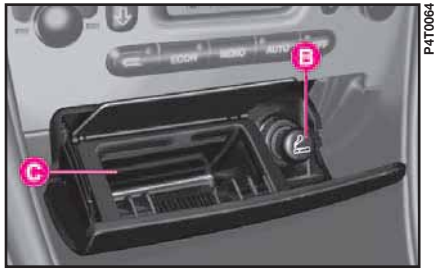


fig. 125

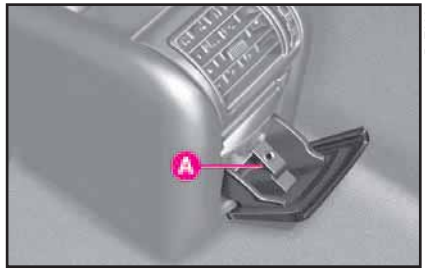


fig. 126

CARD HOLDER (fig. 127)

The card holder is located in the centre of the dashboard.

To open: press the front and release. The card holder will open automatically.

Push if fully to close the holder.

CUP/CAN HOLDER (fig. 128)

The holder is located in the centre of the dashboard. To open: press the front and release. The cup/can holder will open automatically.

Push it fully to close the holder.

COIN TRAY (fig. 129)

The tray **A** is located in the central dashboard unit.

SUN VISORS (fig. 130)

The sun visors can swing up or down or be pivoted sideways.

Release the visors from hooks **A** to move them sideways.

A courtesy mirror with sliding cover **B** and light **C** is fitted on the back of the sun visors (for details on the lights, see "Courtesy lights" in this chapter).

fig. 128

fig. 127

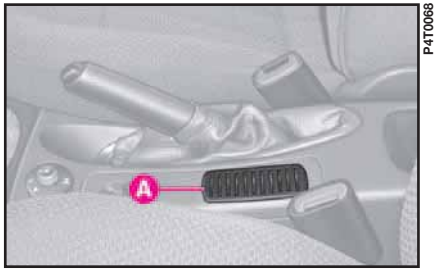


fig. 129

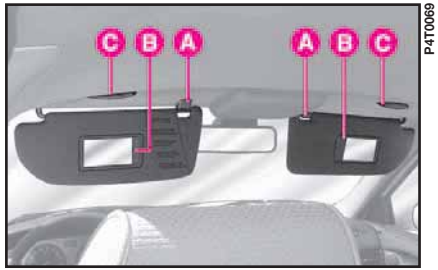


fig. 130

ODDMENT COMPARTMENTS

Oddment compartments on the dashboard (fig. 131-132)

There is a central compartment **A** (with light) and a side compartment **B** on the dashboard.

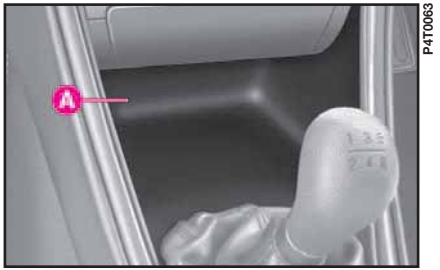


fig. 131

fig. 132

Rear oddment compartment (fig. 133)

An oddment compartment **A** can be found in the rear part of the central dashboard unit.

fig. 133

Door pockets (fig. 134)

Pockets **A** are located on the front door panels.

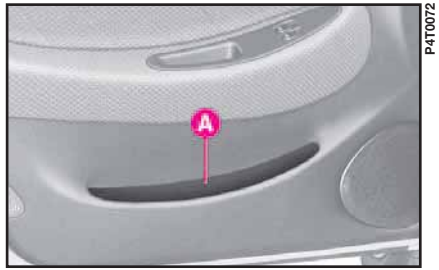


fig. 134

PAPER POCKETS (fig. 135)

Paper pockets are located on the back of the front seats.

HANDLES (fig. 136)

A handle is located over the front passenger side door.

Two handles **A** with clothes hook **B** are over the rear doors.

The handles are equipped with a device which gradually and progressively takes them back to home position.

FRONT ARMREST (fig. 137)

The armrest can be adjusted up or down.

To use the armrest, lower it as shown in the figure.

An oddment compartment is concealed inside the armrest. Press button **A** to lift the cover.

IMPORTANT When the armrest has been lifted completely, take care not to accidentally press button **A**, otherwise you will open the object tray cover and the contents will fall out.

fig. 135

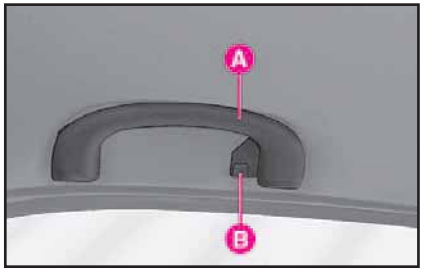


fig. 136

fig. 137

POWER SOCKET (fig. 138) (where fitted)

It is located on the rear part of the central dashboard panel. Open cover **A** to use the socket.

The socket is powered when the key is turned to **MAR**. It can be used only for accessories with a maximum intake of 15A (power 180W).

Do not use the socket for power devices with a higher intake. Prolonged current intake can drain the battery and lead to problems when starting the engine.

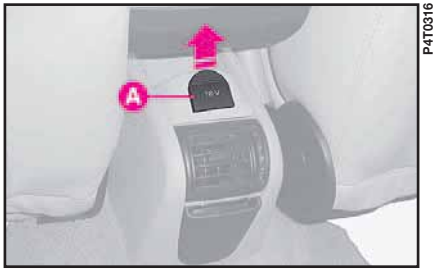


fig. 138

SUNROOF (where fitted)

The sunroof is electrically operated. It will only work when the ignition key is at **MAR**.

Improper use of the sunroof can be dangerous. Before and during its operation ensure that any passengers in the car are not at risk from the moving roof either by personal objects getting caught in the mechanism or by being injured by it directly. Always remove the ignition key when you get out of the car to prevent the sunroof being operated accidentally and constituting a danger to the people left in the car.

Do not open the sunroof if there is snow or ice on it: you may damage the mechanism.

OPENING AND CLOSING (fig. 139-140)

Button **A** on the ceiling light unit controls the opening, closing, raising and lowering of the roof.

When you release the button, the roof locks in the position it is in at that moment.

Press the back of the button to open the roof and the front to close.

fig. 139

A small spoiler **B** will be lifted when the roof is opened to direct the flow of air.

Regularly check that the side holes C for draining water are free.

IMPORTANT With ignition key at **STOP**, sunroof open is indicated by a timed buzzer sounding when opening a front door.

SLIDING SUNSHADE (fig. 141)

A sliding sunshade is fitted to lessen the effect of sun rays in the passenger compartment when the sunroof is closed or partially open.

Use handle **A** to open and close the sunshade by hand.

The sunshade slides back into the roof when the sunroof when it is completely opened.

When the roof is closed, the sunshade slides out partially to make the handle accessible.

fig. 140

fig. 141

SPOILER POSITION (fig. 142)

The rear part of the sunroof can only be raised when the roof is completely closed. Press the front part of button **A** (**fig. 139**).

Press the back part of the button to close the back of the roof.

IMPORTANT With ignition key at **STOP**, sunroof open is indicated by a timed buzzer sounding when opening a front door.

EMERGENCY PROCEDURE (fig. 143-144)

If there is an electrical fault in the sunroof, remove cover **A** from the front ceiling light using the screwdriver provided as a lever in point **B**.

Insert the screwdriver in **C** and turn it. In this way, you can manually open and close the sunroof.

When the roof is in the required position, turn the screwdriver half a turn backwards until you hear a click. Then remove the screwdriver.

fig. 142

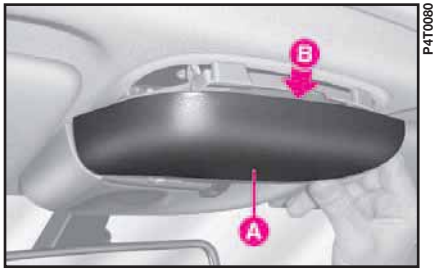


fig. 143

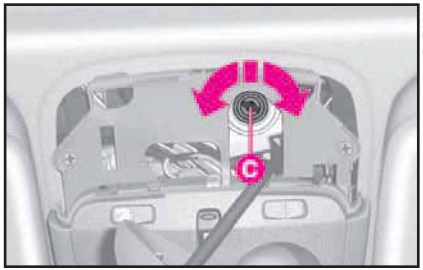


fig. 144

DOORS

CENTRAL DOOR LOCKING SYSTEM

From the outside

Close the doors and either press button **A** (**fig. 145**) on the key grip or insert and turn the key in the driver's door lock.

To unlock, turn the key to position **1** (**fig. 146**).

To lock, turn the key to position **2**.

To open the door, lift the handle.

IMPORTANT The electronic alarm (where fitted) will not be switched on by locking the door with the key in the lock.

From the inside (fig. 147-148)

When the doors are closed press (to lock) or lift (to unlock) one of the front door sill buttons **A**.

The rear door sill buttons will lock and unlock only that particular door.

The rear doors can only be opened from the inside when the child locks are not engaged.

Pull the handle **B** to open the door. All doors are unlocked when a front door handle is operated.

A light **C** (where fitted) is located near each door handle to make it easy to find the handle in the dark.

fig. 145

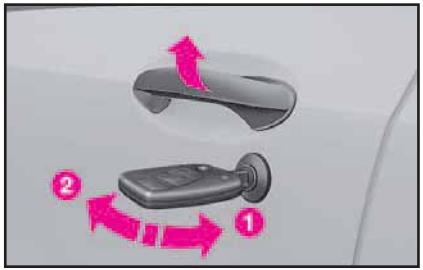


fig. 146

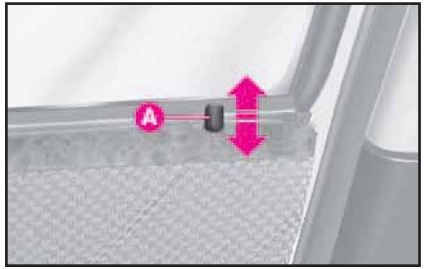


fig. 147

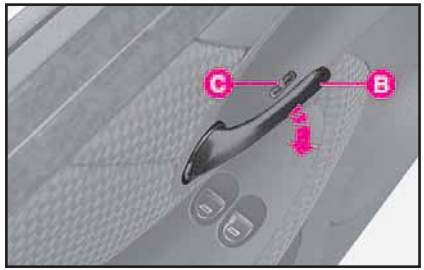


fig. 148

IMPORTANT If one of the doors is not shut properly or there is a failure in the system, the central door locking system will not work and after some attempts the device stops working for about two minutes. In these two minutes, the doors can be locked or unlocked manually without the electrical system coming into play. After the two minutes, the control unit is ready to receive commands once again. If the cause of the failure is removed, the device will start working properly, otherwise it will cut out once more.

CHILD LOCK (fig. 149)

To prevent opening the rear doors from the inside.

Engage by inserting the tip of the ignition key in **A** to turn the lock.

Position **1** - engaged.

Position **2** - disengaged.

The device will be engaged even if the doors are unlocked by means of the centralised system.

IMPORTANT After engaging the lock, check by trying to open a rear door with the internal handle.

Always use the lock when transporting children. This will prevent them opening a door by themselves when travelling.

fig. 149

PUDDLE LIGHTS (fig. 150)

The puddle lights are fitted in the lower part of the front door panels to illuminate the ground.

These lights will come on with the front ceiling lights.

fig. 150

ELECTRIC WINDOWS

Front and rear electric windows are provided with anti-crushing safety device. When the system control unit detects an obstacle in the last 20 cm of the window closing travel, it makes the window travel stop and reverse immediately.

IMPORTANT Should all the power windows be operated at the same time when closing there could be a stroke inversion of one of them. It is therefore suggested to check that closure is performed.

To prevent system malfunctioning, do not keep the control buttons pressed when the window has reached the end of its travel.

Should the battery be disconnected or a dedicated fuse be replaced, reinitialise the anti-crushing safety device proceeding as follows:

1) lower completely the driver's window keeping the control button depressed for at least 3 seconds after it has reached the end of its travel;

2) release the control button then close the window completely keeping the button pulled up for at least 3 seconds after the window has reached the end of its travel;

3) proceed in the same way for all the other windows avoiding to perform these operations on more than one window at the same time.

At the end of this procedure the system is reset to its original operating conditions, otherwise contact a Lancia Dealership as soon as possible.

Front electrical window winders (fig. 151)

The electrical window winders are controlled by buttons located on the door panel on driver's side. They work when the ignition key is at **MAR**:

A - front left-hand window

B - front right-hand window

C - rear left-hand window

D - rear right-hand window

E - switch to disable rear electrical window winders.

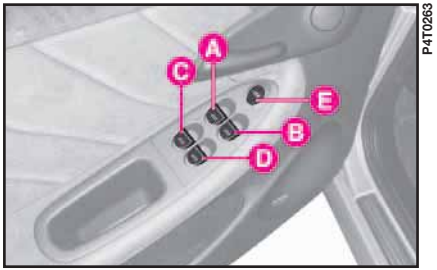


fig. 151

IMPORTANT The front window winders can be operated for five minutes after the key is turned to **STOP** (and not extracted) with the doors closed.

The rear window winder controls will be disabled when switch **E** is up.

Pull up or press the control button to activate automatic closing or opening: the window will stop when it reaches the end of its travel (or when the button is pressed again).

A short pulse results in a short window movement.

Should there be a failure in the anti-crushing safety system, automatic window operation (both closing and opening) is excluded. Contact a Lancia Dealership as soon as possible.

The door handle on the passenger side has a switch to control that particular window.

Rear electrical window winders (fig. 152)

A button to operate the respective window in located in each rear door handle.

Pull the button to wind the window up or press it to wind the window down.

Switches **C** and **D** (**fig. 151**) operate the rear window windows from the driver's seat.

Switch **E** (**fig. 151**) disables the controls on door handles when the switch is up.

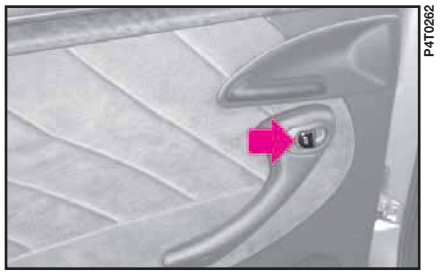


fig. 152

Improper use of the electrical window winders can be dangerous. Before and during their operation ensure that any passengers in the car are not at risk from the moving glass either by personal objects getting caught in the mechanism or by being injured by it directly. Always remove the ignition key when you get out of the car to prevent the electrical window winders being operated accidentally and constituting a danger to the people left in the car.

BOOT

Lift switch **A** (**fig. 153**) on the base of the driver seat or turn the key in lock **B** (**fig. 154**) to position **1** to open the boot.

The boot is locked when the boot is closed.

Use handle **C** to open the boot.

The floor mat can be reversed. Remove it and turn it over with the washable side facing up when carrying dirty loads.

When using the boot, make sure the load you are carrying does not ex-ceed the maximum allowed weight (see the "Technical specifications" chapter). Also ensure the items in the boot are arranged properly and fastened with straps to the specific hooks to prevent them being thrown forwards and injuring passengers should you brake sharply.

OPENING THE BOOT WITH THE REMOTE CONTROL

The boot can be opened from the outside by pressing the button **D** (**fig. 155**) on the ignition key grip.

The boot can be opened also when the central door locking system and the electronic alarm (where fitted) are on.

In this case, the alarm system implements the following strategy:

– volumetric protection off

– anti-lift sensor off

– boot sensor off.

The surveillance functions will be restored when the boot is closed.

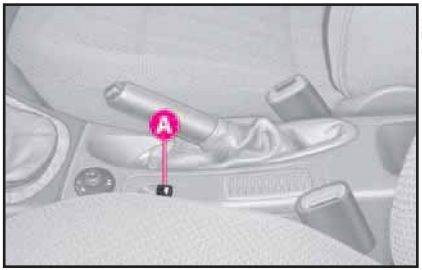


fig. 153

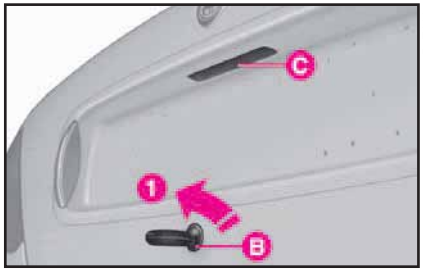


fig. 154

fig. 155

EXTENDING THE BOOT

This is only possible in versions with split rear seats.

See the specific chapter for instructions for the Station Wagon version.

The split rear seat allows to partially or totally extend the boot (one third, two thirds, or totally).

To partially extend the boot (one third) (fig. 156)

Fold the left-hand seat only. You can sit two passengers in the rear seat on the right-hand side.

To partially extend the boot (two thirds) (fig. 157)

Fold the right-hand seat only. You can sit one passenger in the rear seat on the left-hand side.

fig. 156

To totally extend the boot (fig. 158)

Fold both side of the seat to obtain maximum boot capacity.

fig. 157

fig. 158

To extend the boot

1) Pull handle **A** (**fig. 159**) located in the middle of each cushion in the direction of travel and fold it forwards in the direction of the arrow.

2) Remove the head restraints from the rear seat (see "Head restraints" in this chapter) and insert them in the housings on the cushion (**fig. 160**).

3) Turn the lever (**fig. 161**) on the rear window shelf to release the seat back lock.

position **1** = right-hand seat back

position **2** = left-hand seat back.

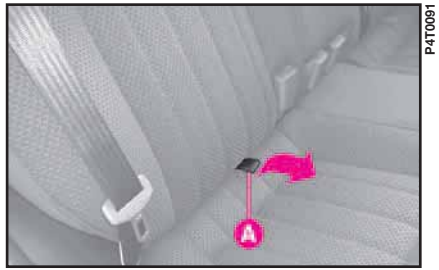


fig. 159

4) Lift the seat belts sideways and tilt the seat back forwards as to obtain a single load platform with the floor of the boot.

To return the seats to their normal position

1) Move the seat belt sideways and bring the seat back to an upright position. Check that it has caught properly.

2) Tip the cushion back and make sure that the seat belt webbing is not twisted in the hidden stretches between the cushions and the seat back.

3) Refit the head restraints.

IMPORTANT If there is a fairly heavy load in the boot and you are travelling at night, it is a good idea to check and adjust the height of the dipped beam headlights (see "Headlights" in this chapter).

ANCHORING THE LOAD (fig. 162-163-164)

The load can be secured with belts attached to the specific rings in the boot corners.

The rings can also be used to fasten the luggage net (optional, can be purchased at a **Lancia Dealership**).

fig. 160

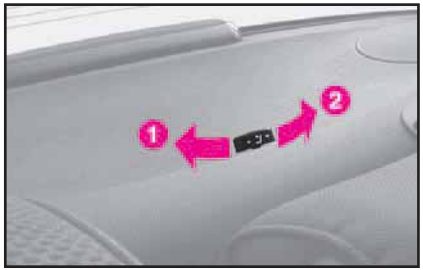


fig. 161

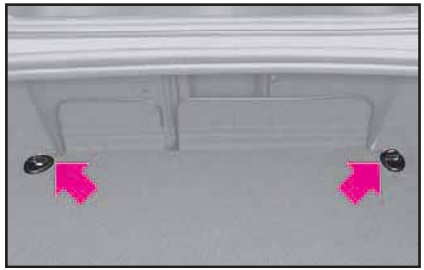


fig. 162

Heavy loads which are not securely anchored could seriously injure passengers in the event of an accident.

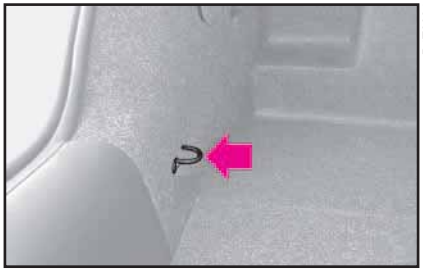


fig. 163

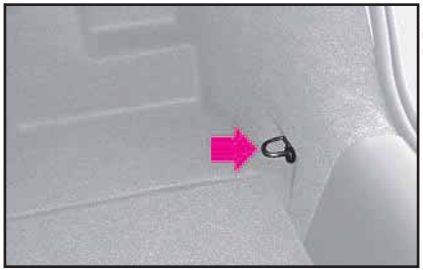


fig. 164

SKI TUNNEL (fig. 165)

The ski tunnel can be used to transport long objects (e.g. skis). Introduce objects into the tunnel from the boot.

1) Lower the armrest **A**.

2) Press handle **B** and lower flap **C**.

3) Remove the cover (where fitted).

Push flap **C** towards the boot to close it. It will lock automatically.

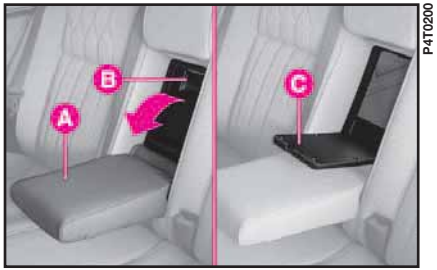


fig. 165

BONNET

To open the bonnet:

1) Pull the red lever **A** (**fig. 166**) in the direction of the arrow.

This should only be done when the car is stationary.

2) Lift lever **B** (**fig. 167**) and release the bonnet from the safety retainer.

3) Lift the bonnet.

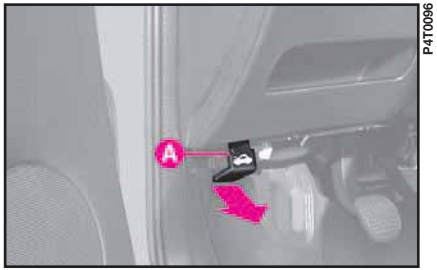


fig. 166

IMPORTANT The bonnet is lifted by two gas struts (**fig. 168**). Do not tamper with the struts and follow the bonnet in its movement.

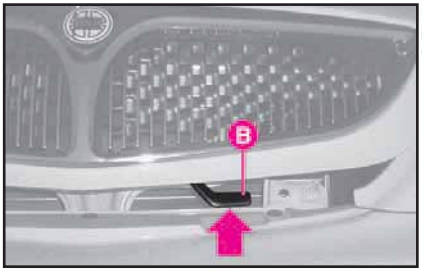


fig. 167

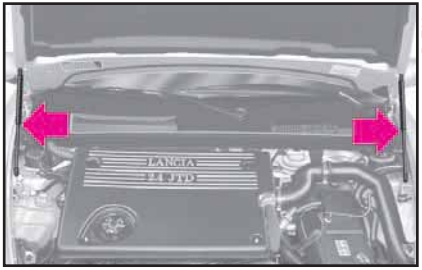


fig. 168

If repairs need to be carried out inside the engine compartment when this is still hot, be careful not to burn yourself and keep away from the electric fan as this may cut in at any time, even if the key is removed from the ignition switch. Wait until the engine has cooled.

Scarves, ties and other loose articles of clothing could easily get caught up in moving parts.

For safety reasons the bonnet shall always be perfectly closed when travelling. Always check for proper bonnet locking. If the bonnet is left inadvertently open, stop the car immediately and close the bonnet.

To close the bonnet:

1) Lower the bonnet until it is about 20 cm above the engine compartment. Let it fall: the bonnet will lock automatically.

2) Make sure that the bonnet is completely closed and that it is not only caught in the safety retainer. If this is so, do not press the bonnet to attempt to close it. Lift the bonnet and repeat the procedure described above.

Always make sure the bonnet is closed properly by trying to lift it so it will not open whilst the car is moving.

FUEL FILLER CAP

The fuel filler cap flap is controlled automatically by the central door locking system.

In an emergency, the flap can be released by pulling wire **A** (**fig. 169**) on the right-hand side of the boot (saloon versions).

In Station Wagon versions, wire **A** (**fig. 170**) can be found inside the right-hand utility compartment on the right-hand side of the boot. Pull the handle and remove the flap to reach the wire.

The airtight seal of the cap may lead to a slight increase of pressure in the tank. A hissing sound when the cap is removed is therefore quite normal.

When centrally unlocked, the flap will be in line with the body. To open the flap, press the front part in point **B** (**fig. 171**) where there is a slight ridge on the surface.

Then pull the back of the flap backwards and turn it outwards at the same time as shown by the arrow until the flap is fully open.

fig. 170

The cap is equipped with a device **A** (**fig. 172**) which fastens it to the flap so that it cannot be misplaced.

While you are filling up, fasten the cap to the device inside the flap as shown in the figure.

Do not put naked flames or lighted cigarettes near the fuel filer hole as there is a danger of fire. Do not bend too close to the hole either so as not to breathe in harmful vapours.

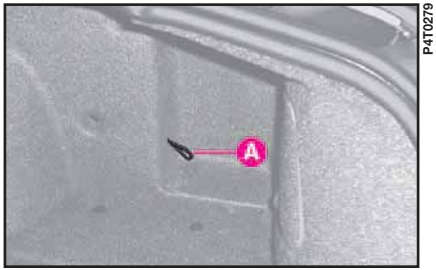


fig. 169

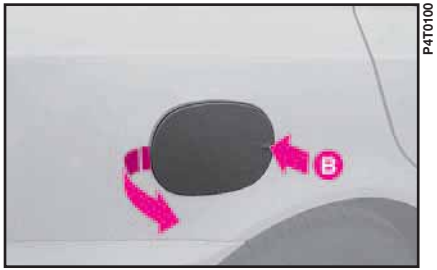


fig. 171

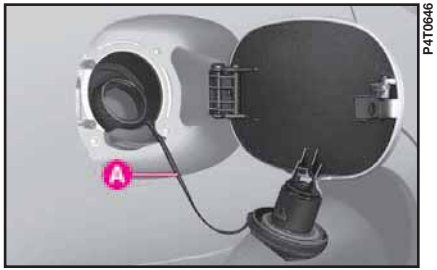


fig. 172

CELLULAR PHONE SET-UP (where fitted)

The system set-up consists of:

– aerial, located on car roof;

The maximum power applicable to the aerial is 20W.

– shielded wire connecting aerial and power. The connectors are located in the central unit near the handbrake lever. The wire contains the sound system connections for the TEL-IN (for listening to a telephone call with the sound system speakers) and TEL-MUTE (sound system muting when a call is received) functions.

The hands-free telephone you purchase will need to be compatible with your cellular telephone.

IMPORTANT When installing the cellular telephone, set the input volume as shown in the Sound system chapter, Possible expert settings list (PHONE SETTING and PHONE AMPLIFICATION).

Have the cellular telephone and the connections to the system installed by a Lancia Dealership only. This will ensure the best results and prevent problems will could effect car safety.

RADIO TRANSMITTERS AND CELLULAR TELEPHONES

Cellular telephones and other radio transceiver equipment (e.g.: HAM radio systems) shall not be used inside the car unless a separate aerial is mounted on the roof.

IMPORTANT The use of cellular telephones, HAM radio systems or other similar devices inside the passenger compartment (without separated aerial) produces radio-frequency electromagnetic fields which, amplified by the resonance effects inside the passenger compartment, may cause electrical systems equipping the car to malfunction. This could compromise safety in addition to constituting a potential hazard for the passengers.

In addition, transmission and reception of these devices may be affected by the shielding effect of the car's body.

ROOF RACK AND SKI RACK

ANCHORAGE POINTS (fig. 173-174)

See the specific chapter for instructions for the Station Wagon version.

The four anchorage roof rack brackets are located on the roof duct (two per side).

The brackets are under the duct weather-stripping. Lift the lip of the rubber weather-stripping to reach the brackets.

Fasten the roof/ski rack to the brackets.

IMPORTANT The weather-stripping should not be crumpled up at the bottom of the channel but should rest along the sides of the roof/ski rack uprights.

After travelling a few kilometres, check that the screws securing the rack are tight.

fig. 173

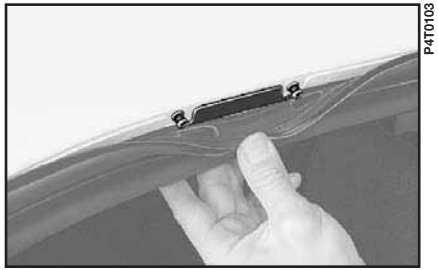


fig. 174

Never exceed the permitted weight (refer to the "Technical specifications" chapter).

HEADLIGHTS

GAS-DISCHARGE HEADLIGHTS (where fitted)

Gas-discharge headlights (Xeno) work with electric arc in an environment saturated with pressurised xenon gas, instead of incandescent filament.

Obtained lighting is significantly higher than that of traditional lamps for both light quality (brighter light) and illuminated area extent and position.

Benefits offered by improved lighting are noticed (less tired eyes, improved driver's sense of direction and therefore improved safety) specially with bad weather conditions, fog and/or insufficient signage since side zones that generally remain in the dark are better illuminated.

Improved side zone lighting improves significantly driving safety since.

It enables the driver to better identify the presence of other users on the roadside (pedestrians, cyclists, motorcyclists).

Electric arc striking requires high voltage, but powering needs then a lower voltage.

These headlights reach their max. brilliancy after approx. 0.5 seconds from activation.

High brilliancy produced by this type of headlights requires the adoption of an automatic system to keep constant the beam adjustment in order to prevent glaring the other drivers in case of braking, acceleration or load transport.

The electromechanical system adopted to keep constant the beam adjustment makes the slant compensation device unnecessary.

Risk of malfunctioning is improbable since Xeno lamps have a very long life.

IMPORTANT The bulbs of (Xeno) gas-discharge headlights must be replaced by a **Lancia Dealership**.

ADJUSTING THE HEADLIGHT BEAM (excluding versions with gas-discharge headlights)

The correct positioning of the headlight beams is very important for the comfort and safety, not only of the person driving the car but also all other road users.

This is also covered by a specific law.

To ensure you and other drivers have the best visibility conditions when travelling with the headlights on, the headlights must be set properly.

Have the headlight position checked - and adjusted, if required - at a **Lancia Dealership**.

SLANT COMPENSATION (excluding versions with gas-discharge headlights)

A loaded car slopes backwards. This means that the headlight beam rises. In this case, a compensation is required.

Adjust the headlight beam position of the every time you change the load to be carried.

Use the electrical adjusting device **A** (**fig. 175**):

Position **0** - one or two people on front seats.

fig. 175

Position **1** - five people.

Position **2** - five people + maximum allowed load in boot.

Position **3** - driver + maximum allowed load in boot.

If your car fits an automatic rear trim control system, operate the electrical control **A** (**fig. 175**) as follows:

Position **1** - one occupant + load in the boot (to maximum allowed load).

Positions **2** and **3** - do not use.

Position **0** - other conditions.

The electronic headlight adjuster is not present on versions with gas discharge headlights as in this case headlight adjustment employs a device which is operated automatically.

ADJUSTING THE FRONT FOG LIGHT BEAM

Turn screw **A** (**fig. 176**) from under the car to adjust the fog light beam.

Have the light position checked - and adjusted, if required - at a **Lancia Dealership**.

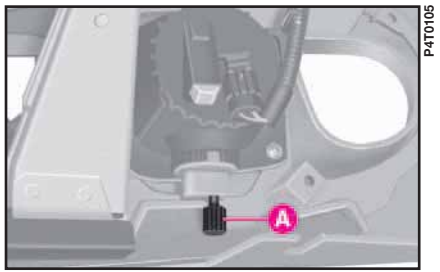


fig. 176

EOBD SYSTEM

The EOBD (European On Board Diagnosis) system fitted in this car complies with Directive 98/69/CE (EURO 3).

This system continuously monitors the engine emission system components. Furthermore, the system warns the driver of deterioration concerning the emission system components by means of the warning light on the instrument panel.

The objective is to:

– monitor system efficiency;

– warn when failures can increase emissions over the threshold established by the European regulations;

– warn of the need to replace deteriorated components.

Furthermore, the system is equipped with a connector for interfacing with specific tools used to read the error codes stored in the control unit memory along with a set of diagnostic and engine specific parameters.

Contact a Lancia Dealership as soon as possible if the warning light either does not come on when the key is turned to MAR or comes on, with fixed or flashing light, when travelling.

IMPORTANT After eliminating the problem, your **Lancia Dealership** will run a bench test to fully check the system. In some cases, a long road test may be required.

ABS

GENERAL

The ABS (wheel anti-locking) system prevents wheel locking and consequent slipping in all road surface conditions. This ensures greater control, as it is possible to steering and brake at the same time, and reduces braking space.

If the road surface conditions decrease the friction coefficient (i.e. due to the presence of water, ice, snow, etc.), a wheel may slip. Furthermore, a wheel which is not locked can absorb the lateral forces exerted by the tyre which preventing steering.

The car is equipped with an electronic brake force distributor - called EBD - which, by means of the ABS electronic control unit and sensors, increases the brake system performance.

OPERATION

The electronic control unit receives and processes the signals from the brake pedal and the four sensors on the wheels. It consequently controls the hydraulic system so to decrease, hold or increase the pressure in the circuit and prevent locking.

IMPORTANT A slight pulsation of the brake pedal may be felt when the ABS system comes into play.

The car is fitted with an electronic braking device (EBD). The (ABS) and (!) warning lights come on at the same time when the engine is running to indicate that there is an EBD system failure. In this case violent braking may be accompanied by early rear wheel locking with the possibility of skidding. Drive the car extremely carefully to the nearest Lancia Dealership to have the system checked.

The (ABS) warning light when the engine is running normally indicates a fault in the ABS system only. In this case, the braking system will still be effective although without the anti-lock device assistance. In these conditions, EBD system operation may also be reduced. Also in this case, you should take your car to the nearest Lancia Dealership avoiding sudden braking to have the system checked.

Stop the car immediately and contact a Lancia Dealership if the low brake fluid warning light (!) comes on. Fluid leakage will compromise efficiency of both the traditional brake system and the ABS wheel anti-locking system.

The system performance in terms of active safety must not lead the driver to take unnecessary or unjustified risks. Always suit your driving style to the weather, visibility and traffic conditions.

Excessive use of engine braking (gears too short and limited grip) may make the wheels slip. The ABS will have no effect on this type of skidding.

The maximum possible deceleration always depends on the available road grip. Obviously, grip will be considerably decreased in the presence of snow and ice. In these conditions, the braking space will still is high, even with the ABS.

ESP SYSTEM

(where required)
ASR -HILL HOLDER -
HYDRAULIC BRAKE ASSIST

Electronic Stability Program

ESP is an electronic system used to control vehicle stability. It contributes to bringing the vehicle back to its correct path by acting on the deflecting torque and braking the wheels separately in case of loss of grip.

A running vehicle is subjected to lateral and longitudinal forces that can be controlled by the driver as long as tyres ensure optimum road-holding; when the latter falls below the minimum level, the vehicle starts to swerve from the path the driver wants to follow.

Especially when driving on a rough roadbed, or in presence of water, ice or loose soil, any variation in speed (when accelerating or braking) and/or path (when taking a bend or avoiding sudden obstacles) can cause loss of tyre grip.

When the sensors detect any condition that may cause the vehicle to skid, the ESP system acts both on the engine and the brakes, by generating a stabilizing torque.

The system's active safety features must not induce the driver to take any unnecessary risk. Driving behaviour must always be proportionate to the roadbed conditions, as well as to visibility and traffic. In any case, the responsibility for road safety always rests with the driver.

An ESP system that also incorporates the ASR function helps the driver keep control of the vehicle in case of loss of grip between the tyre and the roadbed.

The forces generated by the ESP control system to control the vehicle's loss of stability always depend on the grip between the tyres and the roadbed.

ESP SYSTEM OPERATION

The ESP system is automatically actuated upon starting the vehicle and cannot be switched off.

The main components of the ESP system are:

– an electronic control unit that processes the signals received from the various sensors and performs the most adequate actions;

– a sensor that detects the steering wheel position;

– four sensors that detect the revolving speed of each wheel;

– a sensor that detects the vehicle rotation around the vertical axis, and an integrated sensor that detects lateral acceleration (centrifugal force).

The stabilizing action of the ESP system is based on the calculations made by the system's electronic control unit, which processes the signals received from the sensors used to detect steering wheel rotation, lateral acceleration and the revolving speed of each wheel. These signals allow the control unit to recognize the manoeuvre the driver is going to perform when turning the steering wheel.

The control unit processes the information received from the sensors and, therefore, is able to continuously monitor the vehicle's position and compare the latter with the path that the driver intends to follow. In case of disagreement, the control unit selects and performs, in a fraction of a second, the most adequate actions to bring the vehicle back to its path: it apply the brakes to one or several wheels with different force and, if necessary, reduces the power generated by the engine.

Corrective actions are continuously modified and controlled to pursue the path wanted by the driver.

The action of the ESP system greatly increases the vehicle's active safety in many critical situations and is useful especially when the roadbed adhesion conditions are uneven.

ASR FUNCTION
Antislip Regulation

Through the ASR function, the ESP system controls the vehicle's traction: it is automatically actuated every time one or both driving wheels skid.

The ESP systems detects the skid of one or both driving wheels and reduces the power generated from the engine, making it proportionate to the roadbed adhesion.

Two different control systems are actuated, according to the skidding conditions:

– if the skid of both driving wheels is caused by the excess power generated, the ESP system comes into action by reducing the engine power;

– if skidding affects only one driving wheel, the ESP system comes into action by automatically braking the skidding wheel, thus producing an effect very similar to the one produced by a self-locking differential.

ESP SYSTEM ACTUATION SIGNAL

Actuation of the ESP system is signalled by the flashing of warning lamp Ⓐ on the dashboard: this informs the driver of the vehicle's critical stability and grip conditions.

ESP system fault warning

In case of faults, the ESP system is automatically switched off: this causes warning lamp Ⓐ on the dashboard to light up and stay on.

In case of ESP system faults, the vehicle's behaviour will be the same as the models not equipped with this system: in any case, it is recommended that you contact your **Lancia Dealership**.

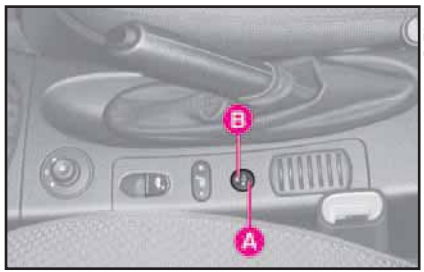


fig. 177

ASR FUNCTION SWITCHING ON (fig. 177)

The ESP system actuates the ASR function every time the engine is started. When the vehicle is running, the ASR function can be switched off and then on again by pressing switch **A** on the central console.

ASR function switching off is signalled by the lighting up of LED **B** on the switch.

If this function is switched off when the vehicle is running, it will be automatically switched on again the next time the engine is started.

It is recommended that the ASR function be switched off when snow chains are fitted to the wheels.

ASR FUNCTION
ACTUATION SIGNAL

ASR function actuation is signalled by the flashing of warning lamp á on the dashboard: this informs the driver that the system is adapting itself to the roadbed adhesion conditions.

ASR function fault warning

In case of faults, this function is automatically switched off. This condition is signalled by the simultaneous lighting up of warning lamp Ⓐ on the dashboard and of LED **B** on the switch.

In case of faults, the vehicle's behaviour will be the same as the models not equipped with this function: in any case, it is recommended that you contact your **Lancia Dealership** as soon as possible, to have the ESP system checked.

HH FUNCTION
Hill Holder (where provided)

It is an integral part of the ESP system and facilitates starting on an uphill slope.

It is automatically activated in the following conditions:

Uphill: vehicle stationary on a road with gradient above 2%, engine running, clutch and brake pedals pressed and gearbox in neutral position or gear engaged (reverse excluded).

Downhill: stationary on a road with gradient above 2%, engine running, clutch and brake pedals pressed and reverse engaged.

During pickup the ESP system control unit maintains the wheel braking pressure until the engine torque required for start up is reached, or anyway for a maximum of 2 seconds, so that the right foot can be moved easily from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

After 2 seconds and without starting the car, the system automatically deactivates gradually releasing the braking pressure. During this phase it is possible to hear the typical brake mechanical disengaging noise which indicates the car is about to move off.

Failure warnings

In the event of failure, the instrument cluster warning light will come on together with the message on the reconfigurable multifunction display (see section "Warning lights and messages").

The Hill Holder system is not a parking brake therefore, never leave the car without engaging the parking brake, the first gear and turning the engine off.

During the use of the spare wheel, the ESP function carries on working. However, you must remind that the spare wheel presents dimensions smaller than the standard tyre and therefore the grip is reduced as to the other car tyres.

For correct operation of the ESP system, the tyres must absolutely be of the same brand and type on all wheels, in perfect conditions and, above all, of the type, brand and size specified.

HBA FUNCTION
Hydraulic Brake Assist (where provided) HBA

The function, which cannot be cut out, recognizes emergency braking (on the ground of the brake pedal operation speed) and considerably increases the pressure in the braking circuit.

Hydraulic Brake Assist is deactivated on the versions equipped with ESP, in the event of ESP system failure (indicated by warning).

SOUND SYSTEM DEVICES

The car is equipped with a complete sound system.

The sound system is built into the multiple function display and can be equipped with an optional CD player and HI-FI sound system.

Lancia ICS (Integrated Control System) with navigation system (where fitted)

The Lancia ICS system with navigation system and instructions for operating the specific sound system are provided in the supplement attached to this Owner Handbook for cars where this system is fitted.

SPEAKERS

Front speakers (fig. 178)

The front speakers are housed in the front door panels.

A - Tweeter (excluding versions with BOSE HI-FI system)

B - Woofer.

Rear speakers (fig. 179)

The rear speakers **C** are housed in the rear door panels (versions with BOSE HI-FI system only).

Speakers on the rear window shelf (fig. 180)

Speakers **D** are located at the ends of the rear window shelf.

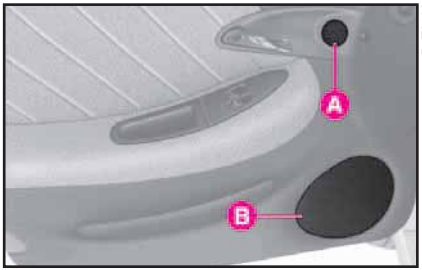


fig. 178

fig. 179

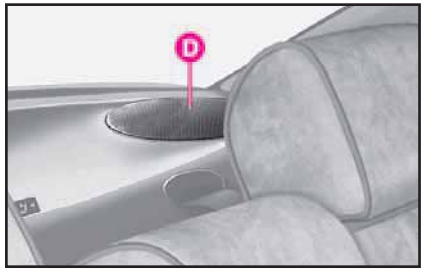


fig. 180

CD PLAYER (where fitted) (fig. 181)

The CD player is housed in the specific compartment on the left-hand side of the boot over the Lancia I.C.S. navigation system CD drive (where fitted).

Turn knob **A** to open the flap.

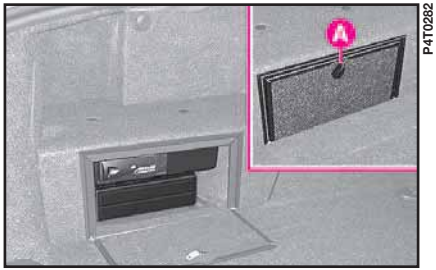


fig. 181

BOSE HI-FI SOUND SYSTEM (where fitted)

The HI-FI sound system consists of:

– two high-performance woofers (168 mm diameter) fitted in front door panels

– two coaxial tweeters (50 mm diameter) built-into the front door woofers

– two high-performance, wide-band mid-range speakers (160 mm diameter) fitted in the rear door panels

– one high-performance subwoofer (230 mm diameter) fitted on the rear window shelf (saloon versions)

– one bass box volume (14 dm^3) fitted on the right-hand side of the boot (Station Wagon versions)

– a high power HI-FI amplifier with 6 channels each with 37W, two of which for class D subwoofer or bass box, with digital signal equalization.

Overall musical power 220W.

The HI-FI sound system was specifically designed for the Lybra to offer the best acoustic performance and the musical realism of a live concert in each seat in the passenger compartment.

System characteristics include crystalline treble and full, rich basses. Furthermore, the complete range of tones is played in the entire passenger compartment embracing the passengers with the feeling of space typical of live music.

The system components are patented and result from state-of-the-art technology. At the same time, the system is easy and intuitive to use and allows even the least experts to use the system to the best.

DRIVING YOUR CAR

To help you handle your car in the best and safest possible way, and above all use it to its fullest potential, we have given you some hints in this chapter on "what to do, what not to do and what to avoid" when at the wheel of your Lybra.

Most of the time, these suggestions apply to other cars as well. Sometimes, however, the tip may apply to an exclusive Lybra feature. You are therefore strongly recommended to pay the closest attention to this section for helpful hints on optimum driving practices and usage of the car that will help you get the most out of your car.

STARTING THE ENGINE

It is dangerous to let the engine run in a garage of other closed area. The engine consumes oxygen and gives off carbon dioxide, carbon monoxide and other poisonous gases.

The engine may be more noisier than usual during the first seconds of operation, especially after it has not been used for a while. This characteristic feature of the hydraulic tappet system does not compromise functionality or reliability. The system devised for the Lybra was designed to limit maintenance interventions.

HOW TO START PETROL VERSIONS

1) Ensure that the handbrake is up.

2) Put the gear lever into neutral.

3) Press the clutch pedal down to the floor without touching the accelerator.

4) Turn the ignition key to **AVV** and release it as soon as the engine starts.

Never touch the high voltage cables (spark plug cables) when the engine is running.

If the engine does not start at the first attempt, return the ignition key to **STOP** before trying to start the engine again.

If the warning light CODE stays on with warning light when the ignition key is at **MAR**, turn the key to **STOP** and then to **MAR**; if the warning light stays on, try with the other keys provided.

If you are still unable to start the engine, perform the emergency start-up procedure (see "In an emergency") and call your **Lancia Dealership**.

IMPORTANT Never leave the ignition key at **MAR** when the engine is off.

HOW TO START JTD VERSIONS

1) Ensure that the handbrake is up.

2) Put the gear lever into neutral.

3) Turn the ignition key to **MAR**. Instrument panel warning lights and CODE will come on.

4) Wait for the instrument panel warning light CODE to go out.

5) Wait for the instrument panel warning light to go out. The hotter the engine is, the quicker this will happen.

6) Press the clutch pedal down to the floor.

7) Turn the key to **AVV** immediately after the warning light goes out. If you wait to long, you will lose the benefit of the work done by the glow plugs.

Idling ratio is kept automatically higher than usual when the engine is cold.

The warning light will flash (for approximately 60 seconds) at start-up or during prolonged cranking to signal a fault in the glow plug heating system. You can use the car as usual if the engine starts but you should contact a Lancia Dealership as soon as possible to have problem seen to.

If the engine does not start at the first attempt, return the ignition key to **STOP** before trying to start the engine again.

If the warning light CODE stays on with warning light when the ignition key is at **MAR**, turn the key to **STOP** and then to **MAR**; if the warning light stays on, try with the other keys provided.

If you still cannot start the engine, get in touch with a **Lancia Dealership**.

IMPORTANT Never leave the ignition key at **MAR** when the engine is off.

HOW TO WARM UP THE ENGINE AFTER IS HAS JUST STARTED (petrol and jtd versions)

– Begin to move forward slowly letting the engine turn at medium revs. Do not accelerate abruptly.

– Do not push the engine to its limit for the first few kilometres. You are recommended to wait until the coolant temperature has reached 50° to 60°C.

EMERGENCY START-UP

If the Lancia CODE system fails to recognise that code transmitted by the ignition key (instrument panel warning light CODE or on) the emergency start– up can be performed by using the CODE card code.

See “In an emergency”.

BUMP STARTING

Never bump start the engine (by pushing, towing or coasting downhill) as this could cause fuel to flow into the catalytic exhaust system and damage it beyond repair.

Remember that until the engine has started the brake booster and power steering systems will not work and a greater effort will therefore be required to press the brake pedal or turn the steering wheel.

STOPPING THE ENGINE

Turn the ignition key to **STOP** while the engine is idling.

A quick burst on the accelerator before turning off the engine serves absolutely no practical purpose and wastes fuel.

IMPORTANT After a taxing drive you should allow the engine to “catch its breath” before turning it off by letting it idle to allow the temperature in the engine compartment to fall.

PARKING

Stop the engine, engage the handbrake and engage a gear (first gear if the car is faced uphill or reverse if it is faced downhill). Leave the wheels steered so to stop the car immediately if the handbrake is accidentally released.

Block the wheels with a wedge or a stone if the car is parked on a steep slope.

Do not leave the ignition key at **MAR** to prevent draining the battery.

Always remove the key when you leave the car.

Never leave unsupervised children in the car.

AT THE FILLING STATION

PETROL VERSIONS

The car's pollution control devices make it essential to use unleaded petrol only.

However, to avoid errors, the diameter of the fuel filler is too small to introduce a lead petrol pump filler.

Use petrol with a rated octane number (R.O.N.) not lower than 95.

Tank capacity: 60 litres including a reserve of approximately 8 litres.

Never put even the tiniest amount of leaded petrol in the fuel tank of your car even in an emergency. You would damage the catalytic converter beyond repair.

An inefficient catalytic converter will allow harmful exhaust fumes to be emitted and thus contribute to air pollution.

fig. 1

JTD VERSIONS

Refuel with diesel fuel for motor vehicles complying with European Specifications EN590 only. The use of other products or mixtures can damage the engine beyond repair and consequent forfeit the warranty for the damage caused. If you accidentally use other types of fuel, do not start the engine and empty the tank. If, on the other hand, the engine has run, even for a very short time, you will need to drain the fuel lines as well as emptying the tank.

Diesel fuel fluidity decreases at low temperatures due to the paraffin it contains and can clog up the fuel filter.

To avoid possible problems, fuelling stations usually sell summer or winter fuel according to the period of the year.

In spring or autumn, however, when the maximum and minimum temperature range is wide (from 0 to + 15°C), the quality of diesel fuel sold at fuelling stations may not be adequate.

In this case, especially for frequent engine stopping and starting at low temperatures (e.g. in the mountains), refuel with winter type diesel fuel. Alternatively add a specific diesel fuel additive to the fuel, in the proportions written on the container. Pour the additive into the fuel tank before the fuel.

The additive is effective only if it is added before the cold begins to take effect on the fuel. Adding the product after will not have any effect.

ENGINE OIL

Checking the level: see the "Car maintenance" chapter.

The gap between the **MIN** and **MAX** reference lines on the dipstick corresponds to approximately one litre of oil.

Use SAE 10W-40 or SAE 5W-30 oil for petrol engines.

Use SAE 10W-40 or SAE 5W-40 oil for diesel engines.

For other information, see the "Technical specifications" chapter.

ENGINE COOLANT

Top up with a 50– 50 mixture of distilled water and **PARAFLU UP**. For other information, see the "Technical specifications" chapter.

SPARK PLUGS	
1.6	LANCIA RC10YCC
	LANCIA BKR5EZ
	Champion RC10YCC
	NGK BKR5EZ
1.8	LANCIA RC10YCC
	LANCIA BKR6EZ
	Champion RC10YCC
	NGK BKR6EZ
2.0	LANCIA RC8BYC
	Champion RC8BYC

BULBS	TYPE	POWER
Main beam headlights	H7	55W
Dipped beam headlights	H7	55W
Gas-discharge main beam and dipped beam headlights	D2R	35W
Front sidelights	H6W	6W
Front direction indicators	PY21W	21W
Side direction indicators	PY5W	5W
Rear direction indicators	PY21W	21W
Front fog lights	H1	55W
Taillights	R10W	10W
Brake lights	P21W	21W
Third brake light (saloon)	2.3W	2.3W
Third brake light (SW)	H21W	21W
Reversing light	P21W	21W
Rear fog light	P21W	21W
Number plate light	C5W	5W
Front ceiling light	W5W	5W
Courtesy lights	C10W	10W
Rear side	C10W	10W
Glove compartment (where fitted)	C5W	5W
Boot (saloon)	C5W	5W
Boot (SW)	C10W	10W
Doors	W5W	5W

TYRE INFLATION PRESSURE COLD TYRE INFLATION PRESSURE (bar)

Saloon	Tyre	Average load		Full load		Space-saver spare wheel
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear	
1.6	195/65 R15 91H	2.0	2.0	2.2	2.4	4.2
	205/60 R15 91V (■)	2.0	2.0	2.2	2.4	4.2
1.8	195/65 R15 91V	2.0	2.0	2.2	2.4	4.2
	205/60 R15 91V (■)	2.0	2.0	2.2	2.4	4.2
2.0	195/65 R15 91V	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4	4.2
	205/60 R15 91V (■)	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4	4.2
	205/55 R16 91V (■)	2.3	2.3	2.5	2.5	4.2
1.9 jtd	195/65 R15 91H	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4	4.2
	205/60 R15 91V (■)	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4	4.2
2.4 jtd	195/65 R15 91V	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4	4.2
	205/60 R15 91V (■)	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4	4.2
	205/55 R16 91V (■)	2.3	2.3	2.5	2.5	4.2
Station Wagon						
1.6	195/65 R15 91H	2.0	2.0	2.2	2.4 (2.7*)	4.2
	205/60 R15 91V (■)	2.0	2.0	2.2	2.4 (2.7*)	4.2
1.8	195/65 R15 91V	2.0	2.0	2.2	2.4 (2.7*)	4.2
	205/60 R15 91V (■)	2.0	2.0	2.2	2.4 (2.7*)	4.2
2.0	195/65 R15 91V	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4 (2.7*)	4.2
	205/60 R15 91V (■)	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4 (2.7*)	4.2
	205/55 R16 91V (■)	2.3	2.3	2.5	2.5 (2.8*)	4.2
1.9 jtd	195/65 R15 91H	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4 (2.7*)	4.2
	205/60 R15 91V (■)	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4 (2.7*)	4.2
2.4 jtd	195/65 R15 91V	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4 (2.7*)	4.2
	205/60 R15 91V (■)	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4 (2.7*)	4.2
	205/55 R16 91V (■)	2.3	2.3	2.5	2.5 (2.8*)	4.2

(■) Optional (*) Maximum load in boot with seats folded + 1 person + 350 kg.
0.3 bar should be added to the values given if the pressure is measured while the tyre is hot.

SAFE DRIVING

In designing the Lybra, LANCIA has made every effort to come up with a car able to provide driver and passengers with top-class levels of safety. Nevertheless it is always the behaviour of the person at the wheel that determines road safety.

Below you will find some simple tips to help you travel in safety under different conditions. You will no doubt be familiar with many of them already but it will be useful to read them all carefully.

BEFORE GETTING BEHIND THE WHEEL

– Make sure all lights, including the headlights, are working properly.

– Adjust the position of the seats, steering wheel, driving and door mirrors properly for the best driving position.

– Carefully adjust head restraints so the back of the head and not the nape of the neck is supported.

– Make sure that nothing (mats, etc.) gets in the way of the pedals when they are pushed down.

– Adjust the seat belts to match your height (see "Getting to know your car – Seat belts").

– Make sure that any child restraint systems (child seats, carriers etc.) are properly fixed on the rear seat.

– Place any objects in the boot in such a way that they cannot be thrown forwards in the event of an accident.

– Avoid placing light coloured objects or sheets of paper on the dashboard to prevent reflections on the windscreen.

– Light eating will help keep your reflexes prompt. Above all, do not have anything alcoholic to drink. Certain prescription drugs can impair your driving skills: read the attached literature carefully.

– Periodically, remember to check the fluid levels as shown in the paragraph "Repeated checks and checks before long trips" in this chapter.

WHEN TRAVELLING

– The first rule of safe driving is prudence.

– Prudence also means putting yourself into a position where you can predict wrong or imprudent behaviour from other drivers.

– Stick closely to the rules of the road in the particular country where the vehicle is being driven and, above all, do not exceed speed limits.

– Ensure that, besides yourself, all the other passengers in the car have their seat belts fastened, that children are sitting in the appropriate child seats and any animals in the car are placed in suitable compartments.

Driving while drunk or under the influence of drugs or certain medicines is dangerous for both you and other road users.

Always fasten both front and back seat belts, including child restraint systems. Travelling with the seat belts unfastened increases the risk of injury or death if you are in a collision.

– You should be physically fit and mentally alert before setting out on long journeys.

– Do not drive too many hours at a time but stop at intervals to stretch your legs and recoup your energy.

– Make sure the air in the car is being changed continuously.

– Never coast downhill (i.e. with the engine off): if you do, you lose the aid of engine braking and power brakes so that braking requires greater effort.

– Never coast downhill (i.e. with the engine off): if you do, you lose the aid of engine braking.

DRIVING AT NIGHT

There are the main rules to follow when you are driving at night.

– Drive especially carefully: it is harder to drive at night.

– Slow down especially if the road is not lit.

– At the first signs of sleepiness, stop: continuing would be a risk for yourself and everybody else. Only start driving again when you have had enough rest.

– Keep a greater safety distance from the cars in front of you than during daylight hours: it is hard to judge how fast other cars are going when all you can see are their lights.

– Make sure the headlight beams are properly positioned: if they are too low, they reduce visibility and strain your eyes. If they are too high they can dazzle other drivers.

– Only use main beam headlights when you are driving outside town and when you are sure they do not annoy other drivers.

– Dip your headlights as soon as you see cars coming in the other direction and pass them with the headlights dipped.

– Keep all lights clean.

– Beware of animals crossing the road when driving in the country.

DRIVING IN THE RAIN

Rain and wet road surfaces spell danger.

All manoeuvres are more difficult on a wet road because the grip of the wheels on the tarmac is greatly reduced. This is why braking distances are much longer and road-holding is lower.

Here is some advice for driving in the rain:

– Reduce speed and maintain a greater safety distance from the cars in front.

– If it is raining particularly heavily, visibility is also reduced. In these cases, switch on the dipped headlights even if it is still daylight so you can be seen more easily.

– Do not drive through puddles at speed and hold on tightly to the wheel if you do: a puddle taken at high speed might cause you to lose control of the car ("aquaplaning").

– Move the ventilation controls to the position for demisting the windows (see "Getting to know your car") so to avoid visibility problems.

– Periodically check the condition of the windscreen wiper blades.

DRIVING IN FOG

– If the fog is thick, do not start out on a journey unless you absolutely have to.

– If driving in mist, blanket fog or when there is the danger of fog patches:

– Keep your speed down.

– Turn on the dipped headlights, rear fog lights and front fog lights, if fitted, even during the day. Do not drive with your headlights at main beam.

IMPORTANT On stretches of road with good visibility, switch off your rear fog lights; the brightness of these lights could annoy the people travelling in the cars behind.

– Remember that fog also means the tarmac is wet and therefore manoeuvres of all kinds are more difficult and stopping distances are longer.

– Keep a good distance from the cars in front of you.

– As far as possible, avoid spurts of speed or sudden deceleration.

– Do not overtake other vehicles if you can help it.

– If you are forced to stop your car (breakdown, limited visibility etc.) try to stop off the road. Turn on the hazard lights and, if possible, the dipped beam headlights. Rhythmically sound the horn if you realise another car is coming.

DRIVING IN THE MOUNTAINS

– When driving downhill use the engine braking effect by engaging a low gear so as not to overheat the brakes.

– Under no circumstances should you drive downhill with the engine off or with the gear in neutral, let alone with the ignition key out.

– Drive at a moderate speed without cutting corners.

– Remember that overtaking while going uphill is slower and therefore requires more free road. If you are being overtaken while driving uphill, make it easier for the other vehicle to pass.

DRIVING ON SNOW AND ICE

Here are some tips for driving in these conditions:

– Keep your speed down.

– Use chains if the roads are covered in snow, see "Snow chains" in this chapter.

– Prevalently use the engine brake and avoid sudden braking.

– When braking in a car not fitted with ABS, reduce the possibility of the wheels locking by varying the pressure you exert on the brake pedal.

– Do not accelerate suddenly and avoid swerving.

– In the winter, even apparently dry roads may have icy patches. Be careful therefore when driving over stretches that do not get much exposure to the sun or are lined with trees or rocks where ice might not have melted.

– Keep a good distance from the vehicles in front.

DRIVING WITH ABS

The ABS is a braking system that essentially offers two advantages:

1) It prevents wheel lock and consequent skidding in emergency stops, particularly when the road does not offer much grip.

2) It makes it possible to brake and steer at the same time so you can avoid unexpected obstacles and direct the car where you want while braking.

To get the most out of ABS:

– During emergency stops or when grip conditions are poor, you will feel a slight pulsation on the brake pedal. This is the sign that the ABS is working. Do not release the brake pedal but continue to press so as not to interrupt the braking action.

– The ABS prevents the wheels from locking, but it does not increase actual grip conditions between tyre and road. Therefore, even if your car is fitted with ABS, keep a safe distance from the car in front of you and keep your speed down when driving into bends.

– ABS serves to increase your control over the car, not to enable you to go faster.

CONTAINING RUNNING COSTS AND POLLUTION

Some suggestions which may help you to keep the running costs of the car down and lower the amount of toxic emissions released into the atmosphere are given below.

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Car maintenance

The overall state of the car is an important factor which has a marked influence over fuel consumption and driving comfort and on the life span of your car. For this reason care should be taken to maintain your car by carrying out the necessary checks and regulations in accordance with the specifications given in the service schedule (see sections: spark plugs, idling, air cleaners, timing).

Tyres

Tyre pressure should be checked at least once every four weeks: if the pressure is too low fuel consumption increases as the resistance to the rolling movement of the tyre is greater. In this state, tyre wear is increased and handling suffers which will effect safety.

Unnecessary loads

Do not travel with too much load in the boot. The weight of the car and its trim greatly effects consumption and stability.

Roof rack/ski rack

Remove the roof or ski racks from the car as soon as they are no longer needed.

These accessories reduce the aerodynamic penetration of the car and will increase consumption. When transporting particularly large objects, use a trailer, where possible.

Electrical devices

Use electrical devices for the necessary time only. The heated rear window, fog lights, windscreen wipers, heater fan require large amounts of electricity and increasing the request for power will also increase fuel consumption (up to +25% when driving in towns).

Climate control system

The climate control system is an additional load which greatly effects the engine leading to higher consumption (up to +20% in average). When the temperature outside allows, use the air vents where possible.

Spoilers

The use of optional extras which are not certified for specific use on the car may reduce the aerodynamic penetration of the car and increase consumption.

DRIVING STYLE

Starting

Do not warm the engine when the car is stationary or at high or low revs: in this way the engine will warm up gradually increasing consumption and emissions. You should drive off slowly straight away avoiding high revs so that the engine will warm up more quickly.

Unnecessary actions

Avoid revving the engine when stopped at traffic lights or before switching off the engine and avoid doubling the clutch as these actions have no purpose of modern vehicles and serve only to increase consumption and pollution.

Gear selections

As soon as the traffic and road conditions allow it, shift to a higher gear. Using a lower gear to liven up acceleration greatly increases consumption. In the same way, improper use of the higher gears will increase consumption, emissions and wear and tear on the engine.

Top speeds

Fuel consumption increases considerably as speed increases. For example, when accelerating from 90 to 120 km/h, fuel consumption increases up to approximately +30%. Your speed should be kept as even as possible and superfluous braking and acceleration avoided as this increases both consumption and emissions. A "smooth" driving style should be adopted by attempting to anticipate manoeuvres to avoid imminent danger and to keep a safe distance from the vehicle in front to avoid braking sharply.

Acceleration

Accelerating violently increasing the revs will greatly effect consumption and emission: acceleration should be gradual and not exceed the maximum torque.

CONDITIONS OF USE

Cold starting

Frequent cold starting will not enable the engine to reach optimal running temperature. It follows, therefore, that consumption will be higher (from +15 to +30% in towns) as will the production of toxic emissions.

Traffic and road conditions

Heavy traffic and higher consumption are synonymous: for example, when driving slowly with frequent use of lower gears or in towns where there are numerous traffic lights.

Winding roads, mountain roads and bumpy roads also have a negative effect on consumption.

Enforced halts

During prolonged stops (traffic lights, level crossings, etc.) the engine should be switched off.

CHEAP RUNNING THAT RESPECTS THE ENVIRONMENT

Environmental protection has been one of the guiding principles in the production of the Lybra. It is no accident that its pollution control equipment is much more effective than that required by current legislation.

Nonetheless, the environment cannot get by without a concerted effort from everyone.

By following a few simple rules you can avoid harming the environment and often cut down fuel consumption at the same time.

On this subject, a few useful tips have been given below to supplement those marked by symbol ⩓ at various points of the handbook. You are asked to read both the former and latter carefully.

LOOKING AFTER EMISSION CONTROL DEVICES

The correct use of pollution control devices not only ensures respect for the environment but also has an effect on the car's performance. Keeping these devices in good condition is therefore a fundamental rule for driving that is easy on your pocket and on the environment too.

The first step to take is to follow the Service Schedule to the letter.

Only use unleaded petrol for petrol engines.

If you have trouble starting, do not keep turning the ignition key for long periods. Be especially careful to avoid bump starting the car by pushing, towing or rolling downhill: these are all manoeuvres that can damage the catalytic exhaust. Use an auxiliary battery for start-ups only.

If the engine begins to "loose its smoothness" when travelling, continue your journey but reduce the demands you are making on the engine and have the car seen to at a **Lancia Dealership** soon as you can.

When the instrument panel fuel reserve warning light comes on, fill up as soon as possible. A low level of fuel can cause an uneven supply of fuel to the engine with the inevitable increase in the temperature of the exhaust gas and serious damage to the catalytic converter.

Never run the engine with the spark plugs disconnected even for testing purposes.

Do not warm up the engine by letting it idle for a while before moving off unless the outside temperature is very low and, even in this case, only do so for less than thirty seconds.

When functioning normally the catalytic converter reaches high temperatures. For this reason do not park the car over inflammable material (grass, dry leaves, pine needles etc.): fire hazard.

Do not install other heat shields and do not remove those already fitted to the catalytic converter and exhaust pipe.

Do not allow anything to be sprayed onto the catalytic converter, lambda sensor and exhaust pipe.

Ignoring the above rules may lead to fire.

TOWING A TRAILER

IMPORTANT

The car must be fitted with a homologated tow hitch and suitable electrical system for towing a caravan or trailer.

Fit special rearview mirrors in accordance with the highway code.

Remember that towing a trailer makes it harder for the car to climb the maximum gradients specified.

Engage a low gear when driving downhill rather than constantly braking.

The weight the trailer exerts on the car's tow hitch coupling reduces the car's loading capacity by the same amount.

In order to be sure you are not exceeding the maximum towing weight you have to take into account the trailer's fully laden weight, including accessories and personal luggage.

Do not exceed the speed limits for towing a trailer in the country you are driving in.

The ABS system will not control the trailer braking system. Great care should therefore be taken when driving on slippery road surfaces.

Under no circumstances modify the car's braking system for trailer braking control. The trailer's braking system must be completely independent of the car's hydraulic system.

SNOW CHAINS

The use of snow chains is regulated by the legislation in force in the country the car is driven in.

Use only low profile chains with maximum height off the tyre of 9 mm.

The chains may only be applied to the drive wheel tyres (front wheels).

Before purchasing or using snow chains, you should contact a **Lancia Dealership** for advice.

Check the tautness of the chains after driving some ten metres.

Snow chains cannot be fitted to the compact spare wheel. So, if a front (drive) wheel is punctured and chains are needed, a rear wheel should be fitted to the front of the vehicle (inflate the tyres to the specified pressure as soon as possible) and the spare wheel should be fitted to the rear. This way, with two normal drive wheels, snow chains can be fitted to them to solve an emergency.

Keep you speed down when snow chains are fitted. Do not exceed 50 km/h. Avoid potholes, steps and pavements to prevent damaging the tyres, suspension and steering.

STORING THE CAR

The following precautions should be taken if the car will not be used for several months:

– Park the car in covered, dry and if possible well-ventilated premises.

– Engage a gear.

– Make sure the handbrake is not engaged.

– Remove the cables from the battery terminals (first remove the cable to the negative terminal), and check the battery charge. If the car is to be stored for long periods the battery charge should be checked every three months and recharged if it falls below 12.5 V.

IMPORTANT Where relevant, switch off the electronic car alarm with the remote control and turn the emergency key to off (see "Electronic alarm" in the chapter "Getting to know your car").

– Make sure the handbrake is not engaged.

– Clean and protect the painted parts using protective wax.

– Clean and protect the shiny metal parts using special compounds readily available.

– Sprinkle talcum powder on the rubber windscreen and rear window wiper blades and lift them off the glass.

– Slightly open the windows.

– Cover the car with a cloth or perforated plastic sheet. Do not use sheets of non-perforated plastic as they do not allow moisture on the body to evaporate.

– Inflate the tyres to 0.5 bar above the normal specified pressure and check it at intervals.

– Do not drain the engine cooling system.

REPEATED CHECKS AND CHECKS BEFORE LONG TRIPS

Periodically, remember to check:

– tyre pressure and condition

– level of battery electrolyte

– engine oil level

– coolant level and condition of the system

– brake fluid level

– windscreen washer liquid level

– power steering fluid level.

ACCESSORIES PURCHASED BY THE OWNER

RADIO TRANSMITTERS AND CELLULAR TELEPHONES

Cellular telephones and other radio transceiver equipment (e.g. HAM radio systems) must not be used inside the car unless a separate aerial is mounted on the roof.

The use of cellular telephones, HAM radio systems or other similar devices inside the passenger compartment (without an aerial) produces radio-frequency electromagnetic fields which, amplified by the resonance effects inside the passenger compartment, may cause electrical systems equipping the car to malfunction. This could compromise safety in addition to constituting a potential hazard for the passengers. In addition, transmission and reception of these devices may be affected by the shielding effect of the car's body.

IN AN EMERGENCY

People who find themselves in an emergency situation need immediate and concrete help.

The following pages have been written to help you if the need arises.

As you will see, a host of little snags have been taken into account and, for each of them, the measures you yourself can take are suggested. If the problems are more serious, however, you should have the car seen to at a **Lancia Dealership**.

With regard to this, we would like to remind you that, in addition to the Owner Handbook, you have also been provided with the Warranty Booklet where you will find details of all the services LANCIA can provide should you find yourself in difficulty.

We nevertheless recommend you read these pages. If in need you will be able to find the information you require much more quickly.

EMERGENCY START-UP

If the Lancia CODE system cannot deactivate the engine immobilising system, the warning lights CODE and stay on and the engine will not start. Follow the emergency start– up procedure to start the engine.

Read the whole procedure carefully before trying to carry it out.

If you make a mistake in the emergency procedure, you must turn the ignition key back to **STOP** and repeat the whole operation from the beginning (step **1**).

1) Read the five digit electronic code on the CODE card.

2) Turn the ignition key to **MAR**.

3) Press and hold down the accelerator pedal. The injection system warning light will come on for about eight seconds, and then go out. At this point release the accelerator pedal and get ready to count the flashes of warning light .

4) Count the number of flashes that corresponds to the first figure of the code on the CODE card, then press the accelerator pedal and keep it down until the warning light comes on for four seconds and then goes out; release the accelerator pedal.

5) The warning light will start flashing again: after it has flashed the number of times that corresponds to the second figure on the CODE card, press the accelerator pedal to the floor and keep it there.

6) Do the same for the remaining digts on the CODE card.

7) Once the final figure has been entered, keep the accelerator pedal pressed. The warning light will light up for four seconds and then go out; release the accelerator pedal.

8) The warning light will flash rapidly for about four seconds to indicate that the operation has been completed correctly.

9) Start the engine by turning the ignition key from **MAR** to **AVV**.

If, however, warning light stays on, turn the ignition key to **STOP** and repeat the procedure from step **1**).

IMPORTANT After an emergency start, you should contact a **Lancia Dealership** as you will have to repeat the procedure described each time you want to start the engine.

JUMP STARTING

If the battery is flat, you can use another battery to start the engine. Its capacity must be the same or slightly greater than the flat battery (see the "Technical Specifications" chapter).

Proceed as follows:

1) Connect positive terminals **A** (**fig. 1**) and **B** of the two batteries with a jump lead.

2) With a second lead, connect the negative terminal **C** of the auxiliary battery to the earth braid **D** of the car to be started.

IMPORTANT Do not directly connect the two negative terminals: sparks could ignite the flammable gas from the battery. If the other battery is fitted in a vehicle, prevent accidental contact between the metal parts of the two vehicles.

3) Start the engine.

4) When the engine has been started, remove the leads in the reverse order (i.e. **D** and **C**, **B** and finally **A**).

If the engine fails to start after a few attempts, do not keep turning the key but have the car seen to at a **Lancia Dealership**.

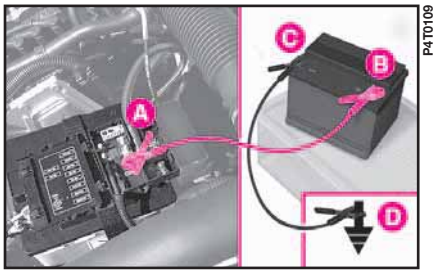


fig. 1

Do not carry out this procedure if you lack experience; if it is not done correctly it can cause very intense electrical discharges and even battery explosion. Do not put naked flames or lighted cigarettes near the battery and do not cause sparks: risk of explosion and fire.

Never use a battery charger to jump start the engine: you could damage the electronic system, with special reference to the ignition and injection control unit.

BUMP STARTING

Do not bump start by pushing, towing or coasting downhill. This way of starting could cause a rush of fuel into the catalytic converter and damage it beyond repair.

Remember that if the engine is not running, the power brakes will not work. You therefore have to use considerably more effort on the brake pedal.

IF A TYRE IS PUNCTURED

Follow the instructions on this and the following pages to use the jack and spare wheel (or space-saver spare wheel, where fitted) correctly.

Signal the presence of the stopped car according to the laws in force (e.g. hazard lights, reflecting triangle, etc.).

Any passengers on board should get out, especially if the car is heavily laden. Passengers should stay clear from oncoming traffic while the wheel is being changed.

If the wheel is being changed on a steep or badly surfaced road, place wedges or other suitable material under the wheels to stop the car from moving.

The space-saver spare wheel (where fitted) is vehicle-specific. Never use the wheel on other models. Never use other models of spare wheels on your car.

The space-saver spare wheel is narrower than a standard wheel and must only be used to reach a service station where to have the punctured tyre repaired. Do not exceed 80 km/h with the spare wheel fitted. An adhesive label is attached to the space-saver spare wheel summarising the main precautions to observe when the spare wheel is fitted and the respective limitations. The following information is provided in four languages on the adhesive label:

CAUTION! FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY! 80 KM/H MAX!

REPLACE WITH A STANDARD WHEEL AS SOON AS POSSIBLE.

DO NOT COVER THIS LABEL.

Never apply a wheel cap on the space-saver spare wheel. The handling of your car will change when the spare wheel is fitted. Avoid accelerating or braking suddenly, steering abruptly or fast cornering.

The life span of a space-saver spare wheel (where fitted) is approximately 3000 km, after which it will need to be replaced with another spare wheel of the same type. Never fit a standard tyre on the spare-saver spare wheel rim.

Have the wheel replaced and re-fitted as soon as possible. Never use two or more spare wheels at the same time.

Do not lubricate the bolt threads before fitting them back: they could come loose.

The jack should only be used to change a wheel on the car for which it was designed. It should not be put to other uses or employed to raise other models of car. Under no circumstances should it be used when carrying out repairs under the car.

An incorrectly positioned jack may cause the car to fall.

Do not use the jack to lift loads exceeding that indicated on the label attached to the jack itself.

Do not fit snow chains on space-saver spare wheels (where fitted). If a front wheel (drive wheel) is punctured and you require snow chains to proceed, take a standard wheel from the rear axle and fit the space-saver spare wheel in its place. Having fitted two standard wheels on the drive axle, you can use snow chains, thus solving the emergency situation.

The wheel cap may fly off when the car is moving if it is not fastened correctly. Never tamper with the inflation valve. Do not insert tools between the rim and the tyre.

Check the tyre and spare wheel pressure regularly. Tyre pressure is shown in the "Technical Specifications" chapter.

CHANGING A WHEEL

Please note:

– The jack weighs 2.05 kg.

– The jack requires no adjustments.

– The jack cannot be repaired. If it breaks it must be replaced with a genuine spare part.

– No other tool, part from the handle, can be fitted to the jack.

The car may be equipped with a regular size spare wheel.

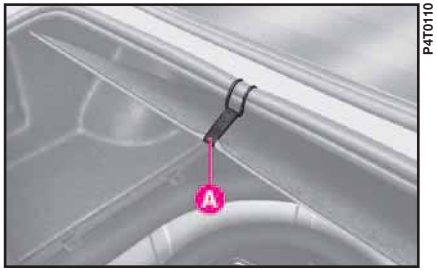


fig. 2

Change the wheel as follows:

1) Stop the car so that it is not a hazard for other road users or yourself when changing the wheel. The ground should be as flat and firm as possible.

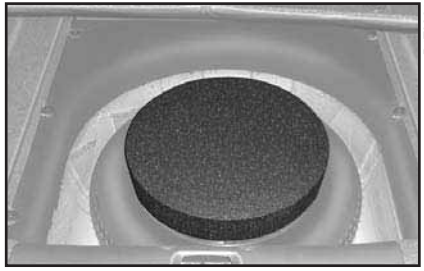


fig. 3

2) Engage the handbrake.

3) Engage first gear or reverse.

4) Open the boot, lift the carpet and fasten it to the edge with the specific belt **A** (**fig. 2**).

You can remove the carpet by pulling it out from the boot. Remove the shim (**fig. 3**).

5) Release the locking device **B** (**fig. 4**). Take the tool kit **C** and the spare wheel **D** and go to the wheel to be changed.

6) For cars with steel rims: remove the clipped on wheel cap **E** (**fig. 5**) by grasping it from the slots and pulling it outwards. Alternatively, use the flat tip screwdriver provided as a lever on the edge.

7) For cars with alloy rims: remove the clipped on wheel hub cap levering in the specific housing with the flat tip screwdriver provided. Then rock the car to make it easier to remove the rim from the wheel hub.

8) Loosen the bolts by about half a turn with the supplied wrench (**fig. 6**).

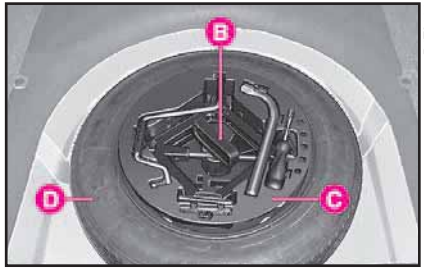


fig. 4

fig. 5

fig. 6

9) Position the jack under the car near the wheel to be replaced in the points shown on the panelling under the door:

– position **1** (**fig. 7**) to change a front wheel

– position **2** (**fig. 8**) to change a rear wheel

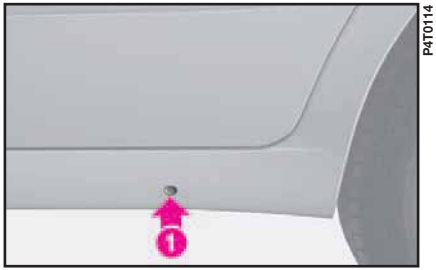


fig. 7

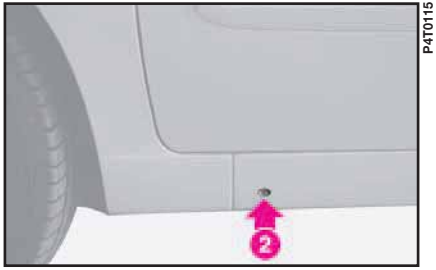


fig. 8

10) Turn the handle **F** on the jack (**fig. 9**) by hand so to open it partially and position the jack under the car.

11) Extend the jack until groove **G** (**fig. 9**) on the jack fits onto the bottom edge **H** of the underbody correctly.

12) Warn anyone nearby that the car is about to be lifted. They must stay clear and not touch the car until it is back on the ground.

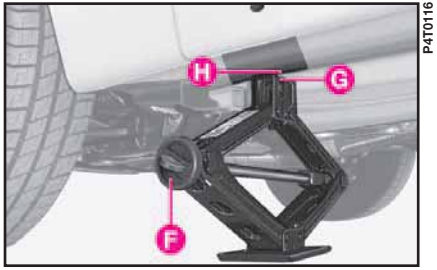


fig. 9

13) Work the jack with handle **L** (**fig. 10**) until the car is a few centimetres off the ground. Make sure that the handle turns freely and is far enough from the ground so that you do not scrape your hands. Do not touch moving parts of the jack (screws or joints) as they can cause injuries. If you dirty your hands with grease, clean them carefully.

14) Loosen the wheel bolts and remove the wheel.

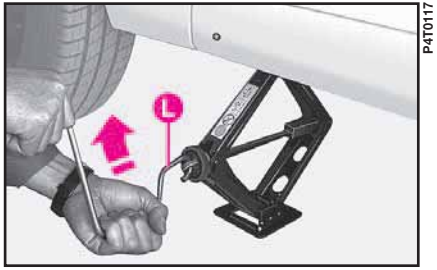


fig. 10

IMPORTANT Use the hexagonal recess on the upper part of the screwdriver grip (provided) to facilitate this operation. Insert the screwdriver blade in the hole in the grip to handle (**fig. 11**).

15) Make sure the surfaces of the spare wheel that come into contact with the hub are clean and free from any impurities which could result in the wheel bolts working loose.

fig. 11

16) Put the spare wheel on, making sure that centring pins **M** (**fig. 12**) on the hub coincide with the holes on the wheel.

17) Tighten the four fastening bolts.

IMPORTANT Use the hexagonal recess on the upper part of the screwdriver grip (provided) to facilitate this operation. Insert the screwdriver blade in the hole in the grip to handle (**fig. 11**).

fig. 12

18) Turn the handle to lower the car and remove the jack (**fig. 13**).

19) Tighten up the wheel bolts in a criss-cross fashion following the order shown (**fig. 14**).

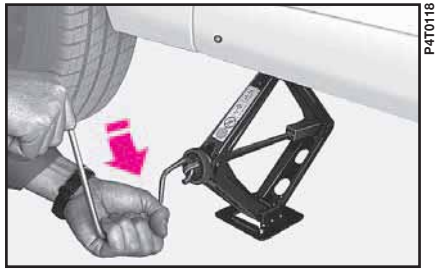


fig. 13

fig. 14

20) Fit the cup on a regular size wheel with the inflation valve **N** (**fig. 15**) at the corresponding position and press on the edge of the cup starting from near the inflation valve. Proceed to complete fitting.

21) Place the removed wheel, the jack and the tools in the boot and fasten appropriately.

22) Reposition the shim (**fig. 3**).

Fasten the strap to the carpet as shown (**fig. 16**) before refitting the carpet on the floor.

IMPORTANT Do not fit the hub cap or the wheel cap to the space-saver wheel.

REFITTING THE STANDARD WHEEL

1) Follow the procedure described above. Raise the car and remove the spare wheel.

2) Make sure the parts of the wheel that comes into contact with the hub are clean and that there is no grit which could cause the wheel bolts to work loose.

3) Fit the wheel by making the centring pins on the hub **A** (**fig. 17**) fit into the holes in the rim.

fig. 15

fig. 16

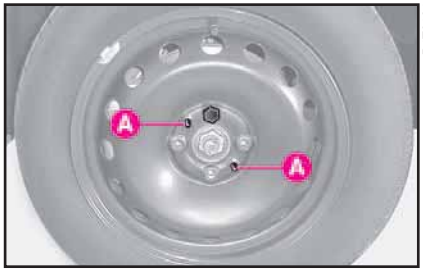


fig. 17

4) For cars fitted with alloy rims: fasten the pin provided **B** (**fig. 18**) onto the hub, then fit the wheel and tighten the three bolts. Remove the pin **B** and fasten the last bolt.

5) Tighten the bolts using the hexagon on upper part of the provided screwdriver and holding the tool with the screwdriver blade inserted in the hole on the handle (**fig. 19**).

6) Lower the car and remove the jack.

7) Tighten up the wheel bolts in a criss-cross fashion following the order shown (**fig. 20**).

8) Position the cap on the wheel rim with the inflation valve **C** (**fig. 21**) coinciding with the recess. Press all round the cap starting from the valve until it is fitted properly.

9) For cars fitted with alloy rims: exert a light pressure to refit hub cap.

IMPORTANT Failure to fit the cap properly could result in it flying off when the car is moving.

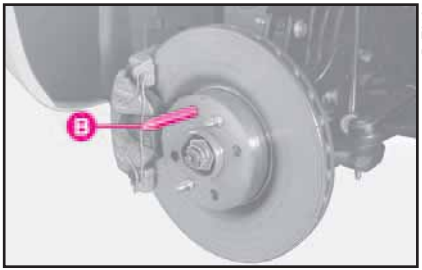


fig. 18

fig. 19

fig. 21

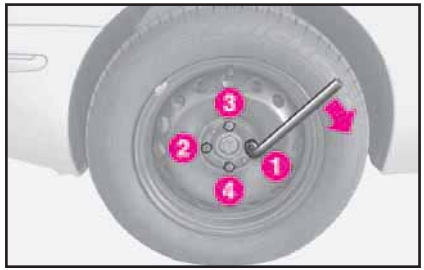


fig. 20

When you have finished:

1) Put the spare wheel back in the boot.

2) Insert the partially open jack into the container and force it slightly so that it does not vibrate when the car is moving.

3) Put the tools back into the container.

4) Position the tool kit inside the spare wheel and fix everything with device **B** (**fig. 4**).

5) Reposition the shim (**fig. 3**).

IF A BULB BURNS OUT

Modifications or repairs to the electrical system carried out incorrectly and without bearing the features of the system in mind can cause malfunctions with the risk of fire.

The bulbs of (Xeno) gas-discharge headlights must be replaced by a Lancia Dealership.

You should, where possible, have your bulbs changed at a Lancia Dealership. The correct operation and slant of headlights is essential for safe driving and compliance with legal requirements.

Only touch the metal part when handling halogen bulbs. You will reduce the light intensity and possibly compromise bulb life by touching the glass bulb. If you touch the bulb accidentally, rub it with a cloth moistened with alcohol and leave it to dry.

Halogen bulbs contain pressurised gas which, if broken, may cause small fragments of glass to be projected outwards.

GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS

– When a light is not working, check that it has not fused before changing the bulb.

– For the location of the fuses, refer to "If a fuse blows" in this chapter.

– Before replacing a bulb that does not work, check that the contacts are not oxidised.

– Burnt-out bulbs must be replaced with ones of the same type and power.

– Always check the slant of the headlight beam after changing a bulb for safety reasons.

IMPORTANT On the inside surface of the headlight there could appear a slight coat of fogging; this does not show a defect, since it is a natural occurrence due to low temperature and to the degree of humidity in the air; it will soon disappear as soon as the lights are turned on. The presence of drops inside the headlight shows water seepage, refer to the **Lancia Dealership**.

TYPES OF BULBS

Several types of bulbs are installed in the car (**fig. 22**):

A Glass bulbs

Snapped into position. Pull to remove.

B Bayonet connection bulbs

Remove from the bulb holder by pressing the bulb and rotating it anti-clockwise.

C Cylindrical bulbs

Remove by pulling away from terminals.

D - E Halogen bulbs

To remove the bulb, release the clip holding the bulb in place.

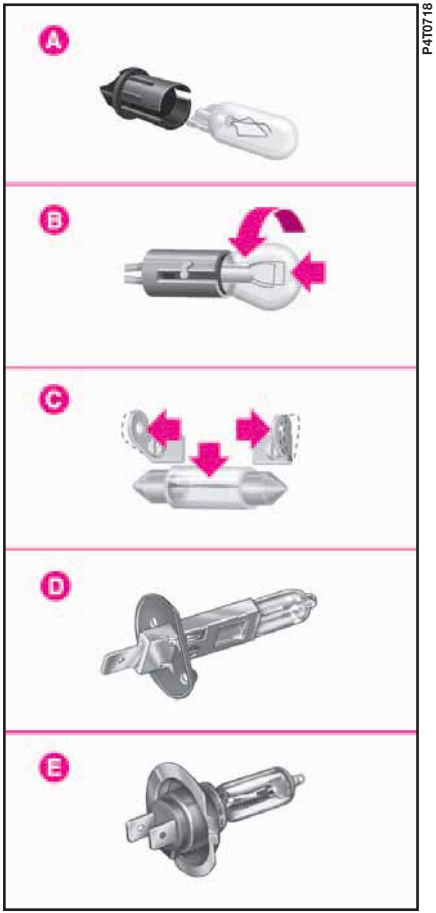


fig. 22

BULB		TYPE	POWER
Main beam headlights	E	H7	55W
Dipped beam headlights	E	H7	55W
Gas-discharge main beam and dipped beam headlights	–	D2R	35W
Front sidelights	A	W5WB	5W
Front direction indicators	B	PY21W	21W
Side direction indicators	A	PY5W	5W
Rear direction indicators	B	PY21W	21W
Front fog lights	D	H1	55W
Taillights	B	R10W	10W
Brake lights	B	P21W	21W
Third brake light (saloon)	–	2.3W	2.3W
Third brake light (SW)	B	H21W	21W
Reversing light	B	P21W	21W
Rear fog light	B	P21W	21W
Number plate light	C	C5W	5W
Front ceiling light	C	W5W	5W
Courtesy lights	C	C10W	10W
Rear side	C	C10W	10W
Glove compartment (where fitted)	C	C5W	5W
Boot (saloon)	C	C5W	5W
Boot (SW)	C	C10W	10W
Doors	A	W5W	5W

IF AN EXTERIOR BULB BURNS OUT

The bulbs of (Xeno) gas-discharge headlights must be replaced by a Lancia Dealership.

IMPORTANT For the type of bulb to be used and the relevant power, see the summary table at the previous chapter "If a bulb needs replacing".

DIPPED AND MAIN BEAM HEADLIGHTS, FRONT SIDE LIGHTS

The dipped beam, main beam headlights and the front side lights are housed in the front headlight cluster.

Press the upper tab **A** (**fig. 23**) and remove the cover **B**. To refit the cover **B**, insert tab **C** first then press on the upper part of the cover to clip tab **A** into place.

The bulbs are arranged as follows (**fig. 24**):

1) Dipped beam headlight

2) Main beam headlight

3) Front side light

Dipped beam headlight (fig. 25)

To replace the halogen E, 12V- H7/ 60W bulb:

1) Remove the connector from the bulb.

2) Release the fastening clip **A** and remove the bulb.

3) Insert the new bulb. Make the tab **B** on the metal part of the bulb coincide with the specific groove on the headlight dish.

4) Refit the fastening clip and refit the connector.

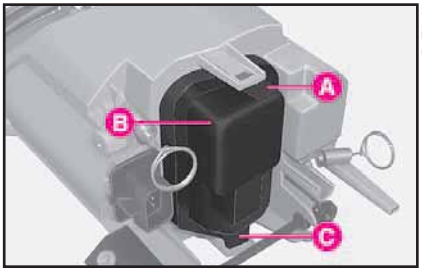


fig. 23

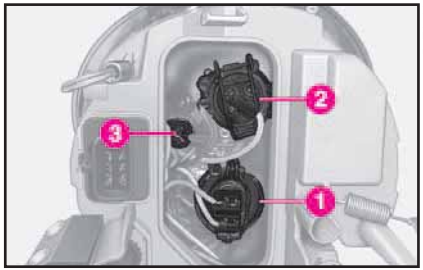


fig. 24

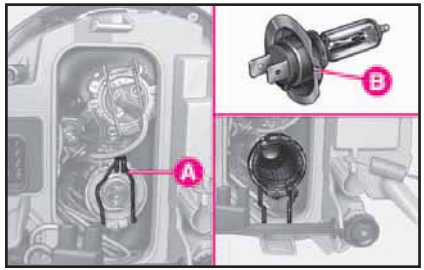


fig. 25

Main beam headlight (fig. 26)

To replace the bulb:

1) Remove the connector from the bulb.

2) Release the fastening clip **A** and remove the bulb.

3) Insert the new bulb. Make the tab **B** on the metal part of the bulb coincide with the specific groove on the headlight dish.

4) Refit the fastening clip and refit the connector.

Front side light (fig. 27)

To replace the bulb:

1) Remove the bulb holder **A** by holding the tab and turning it slightly.

2) Remove the bulb **B** by pressing it slightly and turning it anticlockwise.

3) Replace the bulb and refit the clipped in bulb holder.

FRONT DIRECTION INDICATORS

To replace the bulb:

1) Turn the bulb holder **A** (**fig. 28**) anticlockwise and remove it.

2) Remove the bulb **B** by pressing it lightly and turning it anticlockwise.

3) After replacing the bulb, refit the bulb holder on the lens.

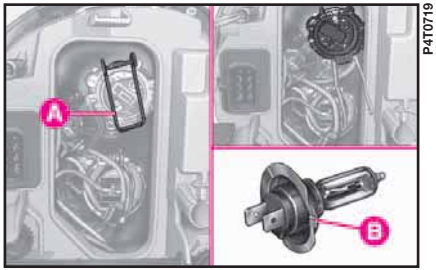


fig. 26

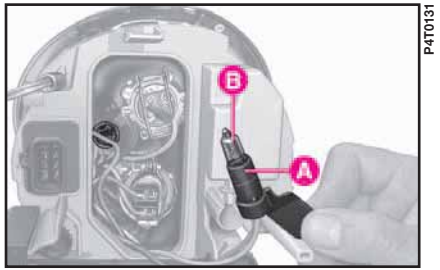


fig. 27

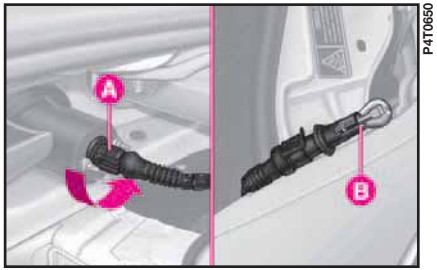


fig. 28

FRONT FOG LIGHTS (fig. 29-30-31)

To replace the bulb:

1) Remove cap **A** by turning it anticlockwise without disconnecting the connector.

2) Remove connector **B** from the bulb.

3) Release clip **C** and remove the bulb.

4) Insert the new bulb making pins **D** on the metal part coincide with the specific recesses on the dish.

5) Fasten clip **C** and insert the connector **B** in the bulb.

6) Refit the cover **A** by turning it clockwise.

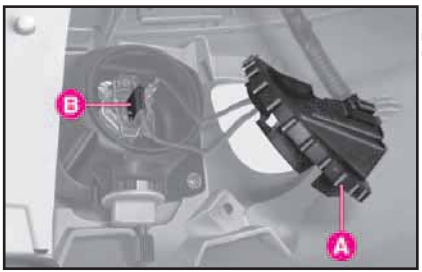


fig. 29

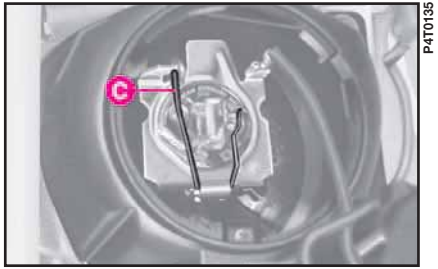


fig. 30

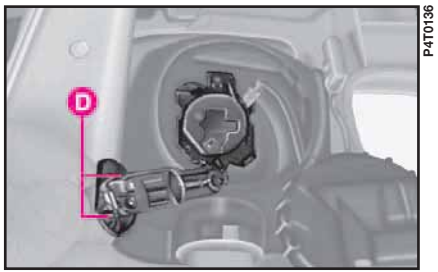


fig. 31

SIDE DIRECTION INDICATORS (fig. 32)

To replace the bulb:

1) Press the lens in direction **1**, press tab **A** and remove the cluster from the front **2**.

2) Turn the arrow anticlockwise and remove bulb holder **B**.

3) Remove bulb **C** and replace it.

4) Refit the arrow in the bulb holder and refit the cluster by fastening the rear part in recess **D** first.

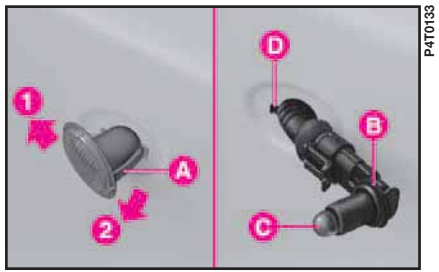


fig. 32

REAR LIGHT CLUSTER

Taillights, direction indicators, brake lights, reversing light and rear fog light (fig. 33-34-35)

To replace a bulb:

1) From inside the boot, turn knob **A** and lift cover **B**.

2) Loosen the screw **C** and remove the bulb holder **D**.

3) Remove the bulbs, pushing them slightly and turning them anticlockwise.

E - Taillight bulb.

F - Brake light bulb.

G - Direction indicator bulb (orange).

H - Reversing light (right-hand cluster only).
Rear fog light (left-hand cluster only).

4) After replacing the bulbs, refit the bulb holder **D** and fasten with screw **C**.

5) Lower the cover **B** and fasten by turning knob **A**.

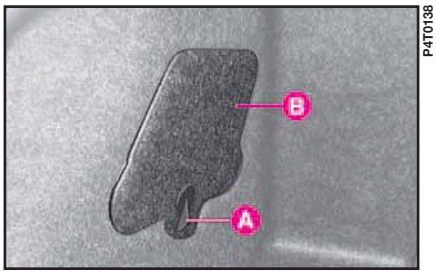


fig. 33

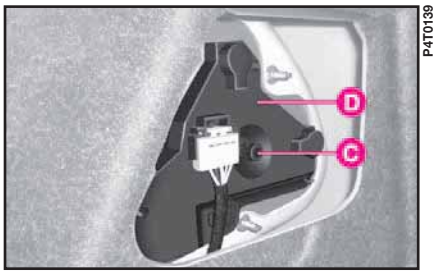


fig. 34

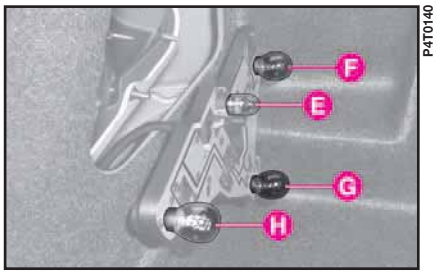


fig. 35

NUMBER PLATE LIGHTS (fig. 36)

To replace the bulb:

1) Loosen the screws **A** and remove the lens **B**.

2) Remove the bulb **C** by releasing the side contacts and replace it.

3) Refit the lens **B** and fasten with screws **A**.

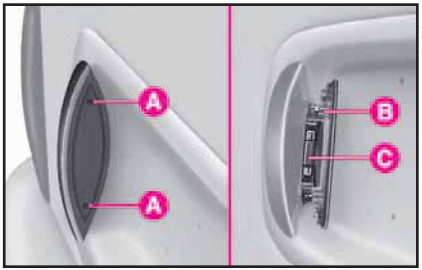


fig. 36

ADDITIONAL BRAKE LIGHT (THIRD BRAKE LIGHT) (fig. 37-38-39)

To replace a bulb:

1) Grasp the light cluster **A** by the side recesses **B** and remove it by pulling it forwards.

2) Remove the connector **C** from the housing on the rear window shelf.

3) Disconnect the connector by holding the retainer pressed.

4) Remove the additional brake light cluster **D** from cover **E** by releasing the side retainers **F**.

5) Insert a new additional brake light cluster in cover **E** so that it clips in the side retainers **F**.

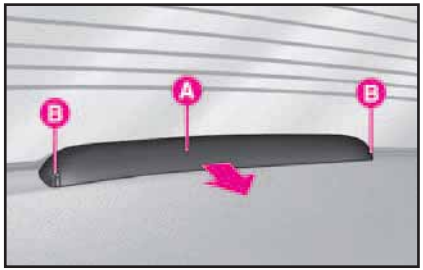


fig. 37

6) Connect the electrical connector **C** and insert it in its housing on the rear window shelf.

7) Reposition the light cluster by inserting tabs **G** in the housings **H** on the rear window shelf. Push it backwards to fit it back in place.

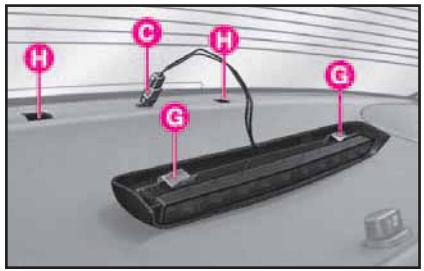


fig. 38

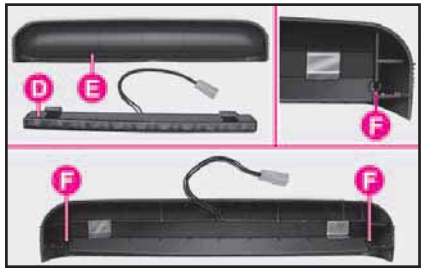


fig. 39

IF AN INTERIOR BULB BURNS OUT

FRONT CEILING LIGHT

To replace a bulb:

1) Remove the ceiling light using a screwdriver as a lever in point **A** (**fig. 40**) and remove cover B.

2) Loosen the screws **C** (**fig. 41**).

3) Remove the ceiling light by pushing it forwards and releasing it from clip **D** (**fig. 42**).

4) Lift cover **E** (clipped on).

5) Release the bulbs **F** (**fig. 43**) from the contact and replace.

6) Close the cover **E** by fastening it in the recess.

7) Refit the ceiling light by fastening clip **D** first and then press on the front part to engage the tabs **G** (**fig. 42**).

IMPORTANT When refitting the ceiling light check that the electrical wires are positioned correctly.

8) Fasten screws **C**.

9) Refit cover **B** by fitting the front part first and then press on the back until it clips back.

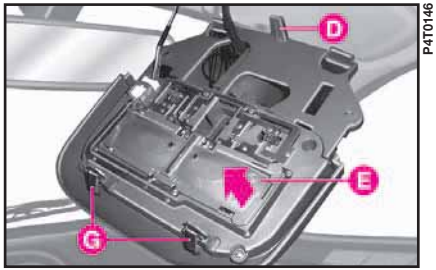


fig. 42

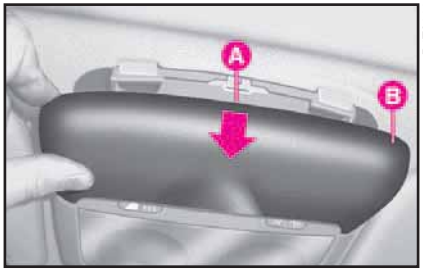


fig. 40

fig. 41

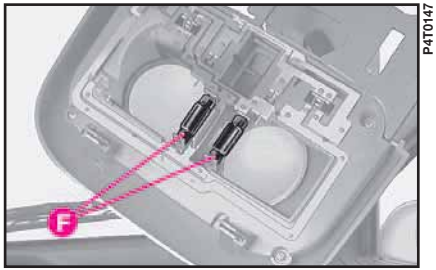


fig. 43

REAR CEILING LIGHT (fig. 44)

To replace a bulb:

1) Remove the ceiling light using a screwdriver as a lever in point **A**.

2) Remove bulb **B** by releasing it from the side contacts and replace it.

3) Refit the ceiling light by inserting side **C** first and pressing the other side to engage clip **D**.

COURTESY LIGHT (fig. 45)

To replace a bulb:

1) Remove the ceiling light using a screwdriver as a lever in point **A**.

2) Remove bulb **B** by releasing it from the side contacts and replace it.

3) Refit the ceiling light by inserting side **C** first and pressing the other side to engage clip **D**.

GLOVE COMPARTMENT LIGHT (where fitted) (fig. 46)

To replace a bulb:

1) Remove the lens by using a screwdriver as a lever on clip **A**.

2) Remove bulb **B** by releasing it from the side contacts and replace it.

3) Refit the lens by inserting side **C** first and pressing the other side to engage clip **A**.

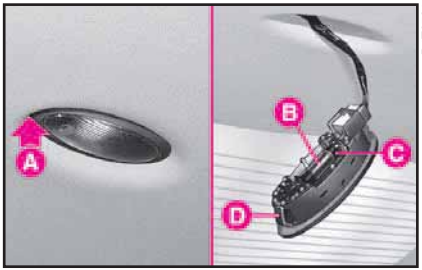


fig. 44

fig. 45

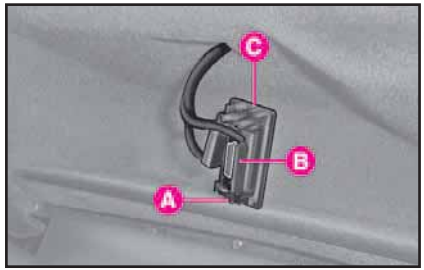


fig. 46

BOOT LIGHT (fig. 47)

To replace a bulb:

1) Remove the lens by using a screwdriver as a lever on clip **A**.

2) Remove bulb **B** by releasing it from the side contacts and replace it.

3) Refit the lens by inserting side **C** first and pressing the other side to engage clip **A**.

DOOR LIGHTS (fig. 48-49)

To replace an bulb:

1) Remove the lens by using a screwdriver as a lever on clip **A**.

2) Press the two sides of shield **B** at the fastening clips and turn it.

3) Replace the clipped in bulb **C**.

4) Close shield **B** by clipping it into its housing.

5) Refit the lens by inserting side **D** first and pressing the other side to engage clip **A**.

fig. 47

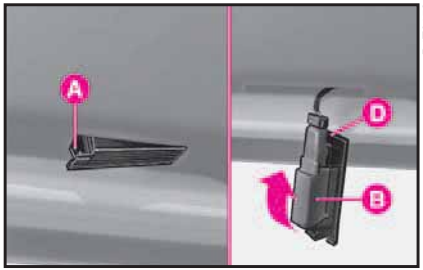


fig. 48

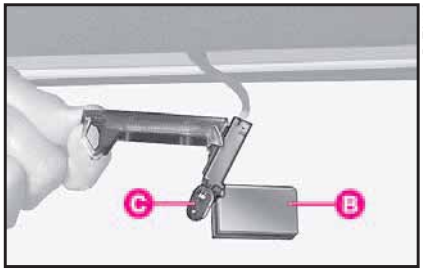


fig. 49

IF A FUSE BLOWS

GENERAL (fig. 50)

If an electrical device is not working, check whether the respective fuse is blown. The conductor should not be broken. If it is, replace it with another with the same amperage (same colour).

A - Undamaged fuse

B - Fuse with broken filament.

Use the tongs **C** to extract a fuse to be replaced.

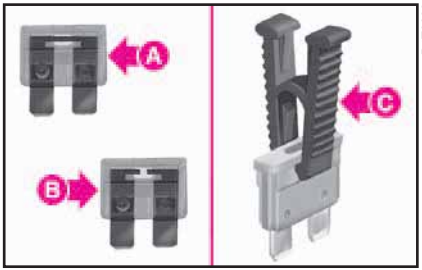


fig. 50

Never change a fuse with higher amperage: FIRE RISK.

Before changing a fuse, check the ignition key has been removed and that all the other electrical devices have been switch off.

If the fuse blows again, have the car inspected at a **Lancia Dealership**.

To locate the fuse, refer to the table on the following pages.

GENERAL FUSES (MIDI AND MAXI FUSES)

The car is fitted with a set of general fuses (MIDI and MAXI FUSES) which separately protect the various electrical system functions in additional to the individual device fuses.

The general fuses are located in the engine compartment in a fusebox directly connected to the positive battery terminal (see “Fuses in the engine compartment”).

If a general fuse (MIDI or MAXI FUSE) blows, do not carry out any repairs. Take the car to a Lancia Dealership.

The devices protected by the general fuses are listed in the tables on the following pages.

FUSES AND RELAYS IN THE FUSEBOX

The fuses protecting the main devices are arranged in a fusebox located under the dashboard on the right of the steering column.

Open flap **A** (**fig. 51**) to access the fuses.

In some versions, symbols indicating the main functions of the fuses in the fusebox and on the auxiliary fuse bracket may be shown on the inside of flap **A**.

The fusebox also contains tongs **B** (**fig. 52**) for removing the fuses.

Spare fuses **C** (**fig. 52**) are housed (where fitted) in vertical position on the right side of the fusebox. The spare fuses present various amperages.

Remember to replace the spare fuses after replacing a fuse.

The devices protected by the fuses in the fusebox are listed in the tables on the following pages.

You will need to remove the fusebox to reach the relays (**fig. 52**). Have this done by a **Lancia Dealership**.

D - Horn relay

E - Heated rear window relay

F - Ignition cut-off powered devices.

IMPORTANT Fuse **13 fig. 52** and the specific fuse (e.g. fuse **4 fig. 52** for the right-hand dipped beam headlight) must both be intact for the operation of certain electrical utilities (dipped beam headlights and side/taillights). Check the conditions of fuse **13 fig. 52** along with fuses **4, 6, 7** and **8** if these utilities do not work.

fig. 51

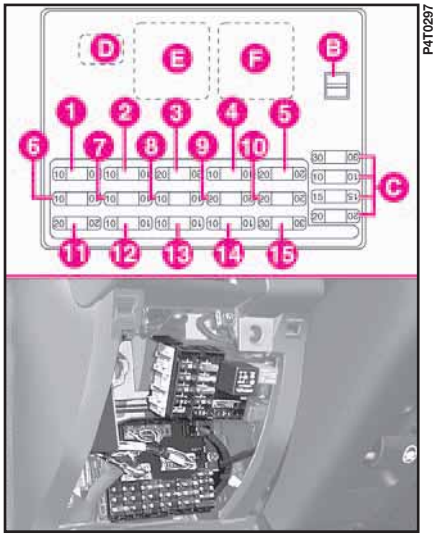


fig. 52

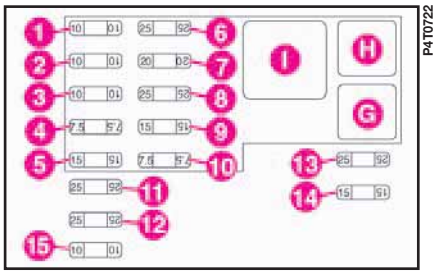


fig. 53

FUSES AND RELAYS ON THE AUXILIARY BRACKET (fig. 53)

The auxiliary bracket is located over the fusebox. Open flap **A** (**fig. 51**) to reach it.

G - Fog lights relay (20A)

H - Dipped beam headlights relay (20A)

I - Heated seats device and control relay (50A).

Should fuses 1, 6 and 8 (fig. 53) be replaced, the anti-crushing safety system of the electric windows must be reinitialised. See "Electric windows" at chapter "Getting to know your car".

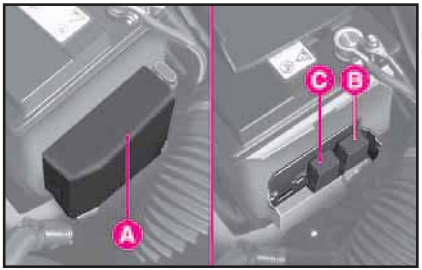


fig. 54

FUSES AND RELAYS IN THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

On the bracket in front of the battery (fig. 54)

To reach the fuses and the relays, remove the clipped-on cover **A**.

B - Engine cooling fan 1st speed relay

C - Engine cooling fan 2nd speed relay (excluding 1.6 version with heater and 1.8 version with heater).

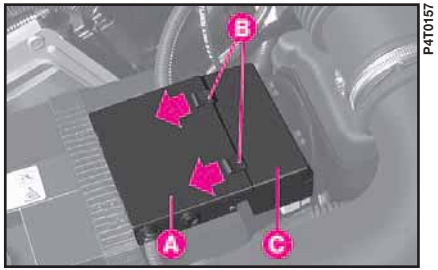


fig. 55

In the fusebox over the battery (fig. 55-56)

To reach the fuses, open cover **A**, move clips **B** forwards and open the clipped-on cover **C**.

Tong **D** for removing the fuses can be found in the fusebox.

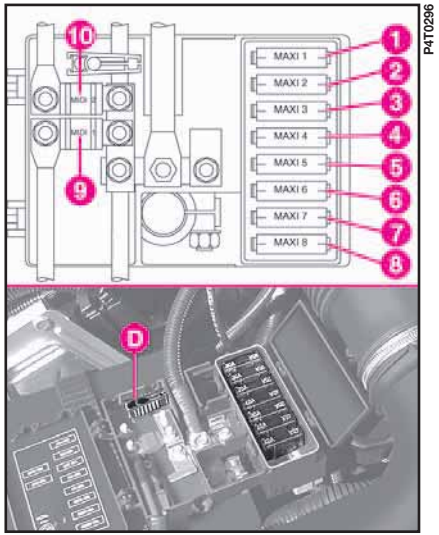


fig. 56

Behind the battery (fig. 57)

To reach the fuses, remove the covers **A** by releasing the fastening clips.

B - Main injection relay (30A)

C - Fuel pump relay (1.8 – 2.0 versions: 20A), (1.9 jtd - 2.4 jtd versions: 30A)

In the service area (fig. 58-59)

To reach the fuses and relays, remove cover **A** (clipped on) by releasing the tabs **B**.

To refit the cover, insert the tabs in recesses **B** first and then press the lower edge to clip it on.

– Climate control compressor relay (20A)

– Headlight washer timer relay

– Direction indicator double contact and centralised door locking system relay (versions without electronic alarm)

– Diesel fuel heater relay (1.9 jtd - 2.4 jtd versions) (20A)

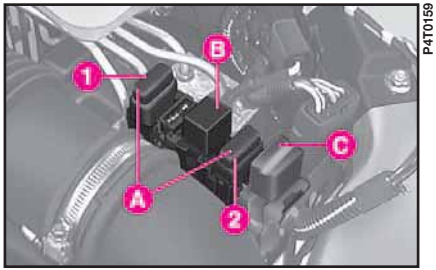


fig. 57

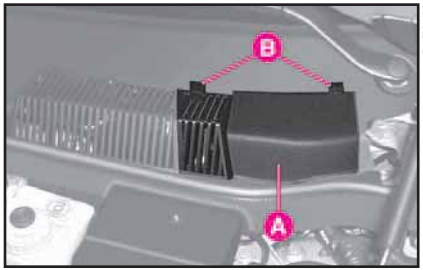


fig. 58

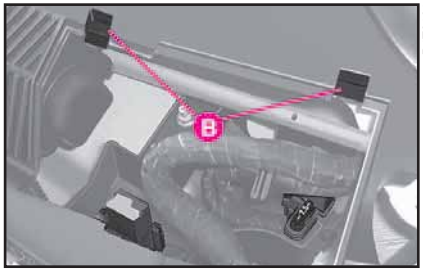


fig. 59

EXTERIOR LIGHTS	FUSE	AMPERE	LOCATION
Right-hand main beam headlight	1	10	fig. 52
Left-hand main beam headlight	2	10	fig. 52
Right-hand dipped beam headlight	4	15	fig. 52
Left-hand dipped beam headlight	8	15	fig. 52
Right-hand and left-hand dipped beam headlight (relay enable)	15	10	fig. 53
Front right side lights (on dashboard)	6	10	fig. 52
Front left side lights (on dashboard)	7	10	fig. 52
Rear right taillights (on dashboard)	7	10	fig. 52
Left right taillights (on dashboard)	6	10	fig. 52
Reversing light	1	10	fig. 53
Reversing light (control)	1	10	fig. 53
Rear foglight	6	10	fig. 52
Right-hand brake light	6	10	fig. 52
Left-hand brake light	6	10	fig. 52
Third brake light	13	10	fig. 52
Hazard lights	14	10	fig. 52
Foglight	9	15	fig. 53
Number plate light	7	10	fig. 52
Direction indicators	13	10	fig. 52
Foglights relay control (on dashboard)	7	10	fig. 52

INTERIOR LIGHTS	FUSE	AMPERE	LOCATION
Glove compartment light (where fitted)	12	10	fig. 52
Sun visor lights	1	10	fig. 53
Passenger compartment front and rear ceiling lights	12	10	fig. 52
Door lights	12	10	fig. 52

INTERIOR LIGHTS	FUSE	AMPERE	LOCATION
Door controls lighting (electric windows control unit)	1	10	fig. 53
Control lights on central dashboard unit	1	10	fig. 53
Icon lights on switches	1	10	fig. 53
Door handles lighting (electric windows control unit)	1	10	fig. 53
Dashboard and climate control system lights	6	10	fig. 52
Main beam headlights warning light	2	10	fig. 52

DEVICES AND UTILITIES	FUSE	AMPERE	LOCATION
ABS (+ key)	2	10	fig. 53
ABS (control unit) – (+ key)	13	10	fig. 52
Cigar lighter	9	20	fig. 52
Cigar lighter (enable relay)	10	7.5	fig. 53
Air bag	3	10	fig. 53
Diagnostic socket power	12	10	fig. 52
Electronic injection utilities power (1.8 - 1.9 jtd - 2.4 jtd versions)	2	7.5	fig. 57
Electronic injection utilities power	1	15	fig. 57
Electronic injection utilities power (2.0 versions)	2	15	fig. 57
Electronic alarm (+ key)	1	10	fig. 53
Electronic alarm (control unit and remote control receiver)	12	10	fig. 52
Front electric window winders	6	25	fig. 53
Rear electric window winders	8	25	fig. 53
Rear electrical window winders (control unit)	1	10	fig. 53
Sound system	3 1	20 10	fig. 52 fig. 53

DEVICES AND UTILITIES	FUSE	AMPERE	LOCATION
Boot (tailgate opening)	7	20	fig. 53
Front electric window winders/centralised door locking system control unit	1	10	fig. 53
Injection electronic control unit.	4	7.5	fig. 53
Centralised door locking system	3	20	fig. 52
Horn	11	20	fig. 52
Climate control system (control unit)	10	7.5	fig. 53
Climate control system (lighting)	6	10	fig. 52
Climate control compressor	5	20	fig. 52
Headlight slant corrector (enable)	8	10	fig. 52
Headlight automatic slant corrector (control unit)	1	10	fig. 53
Cruise control	13	10	fig. 52
Engine cooling fans (relay enable)	4	7.5	fig. 53
BOSE HI-FI system	11	25	fig. 53
Clutch switch (1.9jtd - 2.4jtd versions)	1	10	fig. 53
Windscreen washer	10	20	fig. 52
Headlight washer	5	20	fig. 52
Headlight washer (enable)	8	10	fig. 52
Headlight washer (relay enable)	10	7.5	fig. 53
Rear window washer (relay enable)	10	7.5	fig. 53
Heated rear window (relay enable)	10	7.5	fig. 53
Heated rear window (defrosting)	15	30	fig. 52
MAXI FUSE: glow plug preheating power (1.9jtd - 2.4jtd versions)	8	70	fig. 56
MAXI FUSE: ignition switch (ignition switch powered devices)	2	30	fig. 56
MAXI FUSE: engine cooling fan power (1.6 version with climate control system - 1.9jtd - 2.4jtd versions)	6	60	fig. 56

DEVICES AND UTILITIES	FUSE	AMPERE	LOCATION
MAXI FUSE: engine cooling fan power (1.6 with climate control system - 1.8 with heater versions)	7	30	fig. 56
MAXI FUSE: engine cooling fan power (1.8 with climate control system versions)	6	50	fig. 56
MAXI FUSE: engine cooling fan power (2.0 versions)	6	60	fig. 56
MAXI FUSE: engine cooling fan power (1.9 with climate control system - 2.4jtd versions)	7	40	fig. 56
MAXI FUSE: engine electronic injection fuses and relays	5	30	fig. 56
MAXI FUSE: fuse no. 5-6-7-9-10-11-12-14-15 power (in fusebox) (fig. 52)	1	80	fig. 56
MAXI FUSE: fuse no. 3-4-8 power (in fusebox) (fig. 52) and fuse no. 6-7-8-9-11-12-13-14 (on auxiliary fuse bracket) (fig. 53)	3	70	fig. 56
MAXI FUSE: climate control system power	4	40	fig. 56
MIDI FUSE: additional heater power (1.9jtd - 2.4jtd versions)	10	70	fig. 56
MIDI FUSE: ABS system power	9	60	fig. 56
Navigator (display)	1	10	fig. 53
Current socket in passenger compartment	5	15	fig. 53
Instrument light dimmer	1	10	fig. 53
Centralised door locking system/alarm remote control receiver	1	10	fig. 53
Diesel fuel heater (1.9jtd - 2.4jtd versions)	–	20	fig. 59
Electric driver's seat with memory	12	25	fig. 53
Electrical passenger's seat	13	30	fig. 53
Front seats (heating)	14	20	fig. 53

DEVICES AND UTILITIES	FUSE	AMPERE	LOCATION
Electrical seats (memory/rearview mirror control unit	10	7.5	fig. 53
Electrical seats (movement/heating movement relay enable)	10	7.5	fig. 53
Climate control system pollution sensor	10	7.5	fig. 53
Windscreen wiper rain sensor	1	10	fig. 53
Windscreen wiper rain sensor (control unit relay enable)	10	7.5	fig. 53
LANCIA ICS (display)	14	10	fig. 52
Lancia CODE system	4 –	7.5 7.5	fig. 53 fig. 59
Automatically adjustable internal rearview mirror	1	10	fig. 53
External rearview mirrors (defroster relay enable)	10	7.5	fig. 53
External rearview mirrors (movement)	1	10	fig. 53
External rearview mirrors (defrosting)	15	30	fig. 52
Instruments	13	10	fig. 52
Cellular phone set-up	3 1	20 10	fig. 52 fig. 53
Windscreen wiper/washer and headlight washer	10	20	fig. 52
Rear window washer/wiper (SW)	10	20	fig. 52
Rear window washer/wiper (SW) (relay enable).	10	7.5	fig. 53
Sunroof	7	20	fig. 53
Sunroof (enable)	10	7.5	fig. 53

IF THE BATTERY IS FLAT

JUMP STARTING

See "Jump starting" in this chapter.

Under no circumstances should a battery charger be used to start the engine: it could damage the electronic systems and in particular the ignition and injection control units.

RECHARGING THE BATTERY

You are advised to recharge the battery slowly for a period of approximately 24 hours at a low amperage. Charging for too long could damage the battery.

Proceed as follows:

1) Disconnect the electrical system from the battery terminals.

IMPORTANT Where relevant, switch the electronic car alarm off with the remote control and deactivate the system by turning the emergency key to "**OFF**" (see "Electronic alarm" in "Getting to know your car").

2) Connect the charger cables to the battery terminals.

3) Turn on the charger.

4) When you have finished, turn the charger off before disconnecting the battery.

5) Reconnect the cables to the battery terminals. Make sure the polarity is correct.

The liquid in the battery is poisonous and corrosive. Do not let it touch the skin or eyes. Recharging the battery should be done in a well– ventilated area away from naked flames or possible sources of sparks: explosion and fire risk.

IMPORTANT If the battery is flat, the anti-crushing safety device of the electric windows could be reinitialised. See "Electric windows" at chapter "Getting to know your car".

JACKING THE CAR

WITH THE JACK

See "If a tyre is punctured" in this chapter.

The jack should only be used to change a wheel on the car for which it was designed. It should not be put to other uses or employed to raise other models. Under no circumstances should it be used when carrying out repairs under the car. An incorrectly positioned jack may cause the car to fall. Do not use the jack to lift loads exceeding that indicated on the label attached to the jack itself.

Please note:

– The jack requires no adjustments;

– The jack cannot be repaired. If it breaks it must be replaced with a new jack;

– No other tool, part from the handle shown in this chapter, can be fitted to the jack.

WITH A SHOP JACK OR AN ARM HOIST

The car can only be jacked up by positioning the jack arm under the front **A** riser (**fig. 60**) or the rear riser **B** (**fig. 61**) and placing a suitably sized piece of wood in between.

Be very careful not to squeeze the brake pipes, the fuel pipes or the sidemember ribbing.

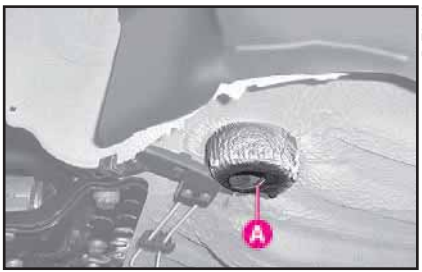


fig. 60

TOWING THE CAR

IMPORTANT Respect the local rules for towing the car.

The car is provided with a front (**fig. 62**) and rear (**fig. 63**) attachments for fastening the tow ring.

To fit the tow ring, remove the bumper cover by using a screwdriver as a lever in point **A**.

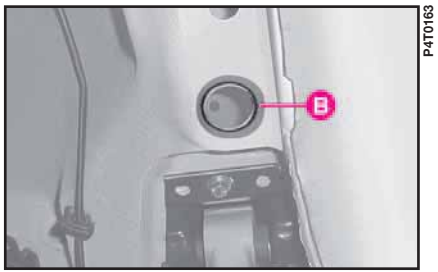


fig. 61

Carefully clean the threading before fastening the tow ring B. Make sure that the tow hitch is fully fastened (by at least eleven thread turns).

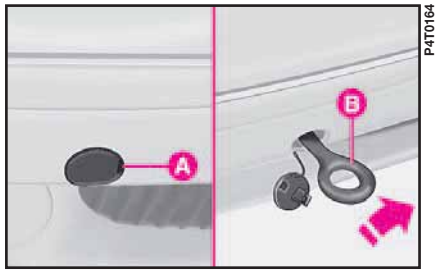


fig. 62

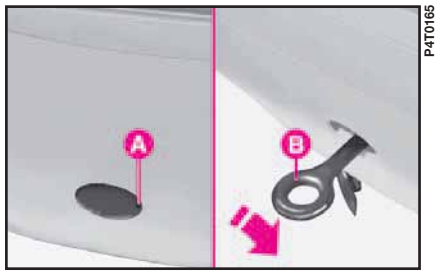


fig. 63

When towing the car, you must comply with the specific traffic regulations regarding the tow ring and how to tow on the road. Before starting to tow, turn the ignition key to MAR and then to STOP. Do not remove the key. If the key is removed, the steering lock engages automatically which prevents the wheels being turned. While the car is being towed with the engine off, remember that the brake pedal and steering will require more effort as you no longer have the benefit of the power brakes and power steering. Do not use flexible cables to tow. Avoid jerking. Whilst towing, ensure that the coupling to the car does not damage the surrounding components.

Do not tow the car with the engine running.

IF AN ACCIDENT OCCURS

– It is important to keep calm.

– If you are not directly involved in the accident, stop at least ten metres away from the accident.

– If you are on a motorway, do not obstruct the emergency lane with your car.

– Turn off the engine and turn on the hazard lights.

– At night, illuminate the scene of the accident with your headlights.

– Act carefully, you must not risk being run over.

– Mark the accident by putting the red triangle at the regulatory distance from the car where it can be clearly seen.

– Call for rescue making the information you give as accurate as you can. On the motorway use the special column– mounted emergency phones.

– Remove the ignition keys from the vehicles involved.

– If you can smell petrol or other chemicals, do not smoke and make sure all cigarettes are extinguished.

– Use a fire extinguisher, blanket, sand or earth to put out fires no matter how small they are. Never use water.

– In pile– ups on the motorway, particularly when the visibility is bad, there is a high risk of other vehicles running into those already stopped. Get out of the car immediately and take refuge behind the guard rail.

– If the doors are blocked, do not attempt to smash the windscreen to get out of the car. It is made of layered glass and is very hard. Side and rear windows are much more easily broken.

IF ANYONE IS INJURED

– Never leave the injured person alone. The obligation to provide assistance exists even for those not directly involved in the accident.

– Do not congregate around the injured person.

– Reassure the injured person that help is on its way and will arrive soon. Stay close by to calm him/her down in case of panic.

– Unfasten or cut seat belts holding injured parties.

– Do not give an injured person anything to drink.

– Do not move an injured person unless the following situations arise.

– Pull the injured person from the car only if it risks catching fire, it is sinking in water or is likely to fall over a cliff or similar. Do not pull his/her arms or legs, do not bend the head and, as far as possible, keep the body horizontal.

FIRST-AID KIT

It is a good idea to keep a fire extinguisher and blanket in the car in addition to the first-aid kit.

CAR MAINTENANCE

Lancia Lybra is brand new throughout, even in its servicing schedule. Its first service schedule coupon is to be used only at 20,000 km. You should still, however, check the level of the various liquids and tyre pressure regularly.

You should nonetheless bear in mind that the proper maintenance of your car is certainly the best way to keep it in tip-top condition for years to come and safeguard its performance and safety features, while respecting the environment and keeping running costs down.

Also remember that the following servicing regulations marked with the symbol ⚠ are essential to ensure the warranty remains valid.

SCHEDULED SERVICING

Correct maintenance of the car is essential for ensuring it stays in tip-top condition for a long time to come.

This is why LANCIA has programmed a number of service operations every 20,000 kilometres.

IMPORTANT The Manufacturer requires the Service Schedule coupon-related checks to be carried out. Failure to do so could result in the warranty being cancelled for those defects that can be attributed to such failure.

Scheduled Servicing is performed at all **Lancia Dealership** and there is a set time scale for such operations.

If it is seen that further replacements or repairs are necessary in addition to the work being carried out, these will only be done after the customer has given his/her consent.

IMPORTANT You are recommended to get in touch with a **Lancia Dealership** immediately if any minor running problems crop up without waiting for the next coupon.

SERVICE SCHEDULE

thousands of kilometres	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180
Check tyre conditions and wear; adjust pressure, if required	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check light operation (headlights, direction indicators, hazard lights, boot, passenger compartment, oddment compartments, instrument panel warning lights, etc.)	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check windscreen and rear window wiper operation and adjust nozzles	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check position and wear of windscreen/rear window blades	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check front disc brake pad wear warning light operation	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check rear drum brake shoe wear		●		●		●		●	
Inspect conditions of: outside bodywork, underbody protection, piping/hosing (exhaust - fuel lines - brake lines), rubber parts (boots, sleeves, bushings, etc.)	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check for bonnet and boot lock cleanness, lever cleanness and lubrication	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check conditions of accessory drive belts and/or poly-V belts		●		●				●	
Check handbrake lever stroke		●		●		●		●	
Check/adjust tappet clearance (jtd versions)	●	●		●		●		●	
Check diesel engine smokiness in exhaust (jtd versions)		●		●		●		●	
Replace fuel filter (jtd versions)	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●

thousands of kilometres	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180
Check fuel evaporation system operation				●				●	
Replace air cleaner cartridge (petrol versions)		●		●		●		●	
Replace air cleaner cartridge (jtd versions)	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check and top up fluids (engine coolant, brakes, windscreen washer, battery, etc.)	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Inspect conditions of timing belt			●						●
Replace timing belt (*)						●			
Replace accessory drive poly-V belt						●			
Replace spark plugs (petrol versions)		●		●		●		●	
Check engine control systems via diagnostic socket (through diagnosis socket)		●		●		●		●	
Check gearbox oil level				●				●	
Change engine oil	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Replace engine oil filter	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Change brake fluid (or every 2 years)			●			●			●
Replace dust/pollen filter (or every year)	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●

(*) Or every three years, in the event of demanding use (cold climate, use in cities, long idling, dusty areas)
Or every five years, regardless of the distance travelled.

ANNUAL INSPECTION SCHEDULE

The following annual inspection schedule is recommended for cars travelling less than 20,000 km a year (e.g. approximately 10,000 km). The schedule includes the following operations:

– Check tyre condition and wear and adjust pressure, if required (including spare wheel).

– Check operation of lights (headlights, direction indicators, hazard lights, boot light, passenger compartment ceiling light, glove compartment light, instrument panel lights, etc.).

– Check windscreen wiper/washer and adjust nozzles.

– Check position wear of windscreen/rear window wiper blades.

– Check front brake pad conditions and wear.

– Check for bonnet and boot lock cleanness, lever cleanness and lubrication

– Inspect conditions of. engine, gearbox, transmission, piping (exhaust - fuel feed - brakes), rubber parts (boots - sleeves - bushings - etc.), brake and fuel line hoses.

– Check battery charge status.

– Check conditions of various control belts.

– Check and top up fluid levels (engine coolant, brakes, windscreen washer, battery, etc.).

– Change engine oil.

– Replace engine oil filter.

– Replace pollen filter.

ADDITIONAL CHECKS

Every 1,000 km or before long trips, check and top up as necessary:

– engine coolant level

– brake/hydraulic clutch fluid level

– power steering fluid level

– windscreen/rear window washer liquid level

– tyre pressure and conditions.

You are recommended to use the products designed and produced specifically for LANCIA cars (see "Capacities" in "Technical specifications").

Every 3,000 km check the engine oil level and top up as necessary.

Maintenance of your car should be entrusted to a Lancia Dealership. For ordinary routine maintenance operations which you are able to carry out yourself, ensure that you have the necessary tools and original Lancia spare parts and fluids available. Do not carry out servicing operations if you have no experience.

IMPORTANT - Engine oil

Change the engine oil more frequently than shown in the Service Schedule is the car is normally driven in one of the following particularly severe conditions:

– towing a trailer

– on dirty roads

– for short, repeated trips (less than 7-8 km) with outside temperature below zero

– with engine frequently idling or for long distances at low speed (e.g. taxi, door-to-door deliveries, prolonged storage).

IMPORTANT - Air cleaner

Replace the air cleaner more frequently if the car is used on dusty roads.

If you are in doubt about how often the engine oil or the air cleaner should be changed in relation to how you use the car, contact a **Lancia Dealership**.

IMPORTANT - Diesel filter

The different grades of purity in diesel fuel normally available might make it necessary to replace the filter more frequently that indicated in the Service Schedule. If the engine misfires it shows the filter needs changing.

IMPORTANT - Pollen/dust filter

If the car is often used in dusty or extremely polluted environments, you should change the filter element more frequently. It should be changed especially if the amount of air introduced into the passenger compartment is introduced.

IMPORTANT - Battery

The charge in your battery should be checked, where possible at the start of the winter, to limit the risk of the battery electrolyte freezing.

This check should be carried out more frequently if the car is mainly used for short trips or if it is fitted with accessories that permanently take in electricity even when the ignition key is removed, especially in the case of after market accessories.

If the car is used in very hot climates or particularly demanding conditions check the battery electrolyte more frequently than shown in the "Service Schedule" in the "Car maintenance" chapter.

CHECKING FLUID LEVELS

Do not smoke while working in the engine compartment: the presence of flammable gas and vapour could cause a fire.

Be careful not to mix up the various types of fluids when you are topping up: they are all mutually incompatible and could damage the car.

1. Engine oil - **2.** Battery - **3.** Brake fluid - **4.** Windscreen washer fluid - **5.** Engine coolant - **6.** Power steering fluid.

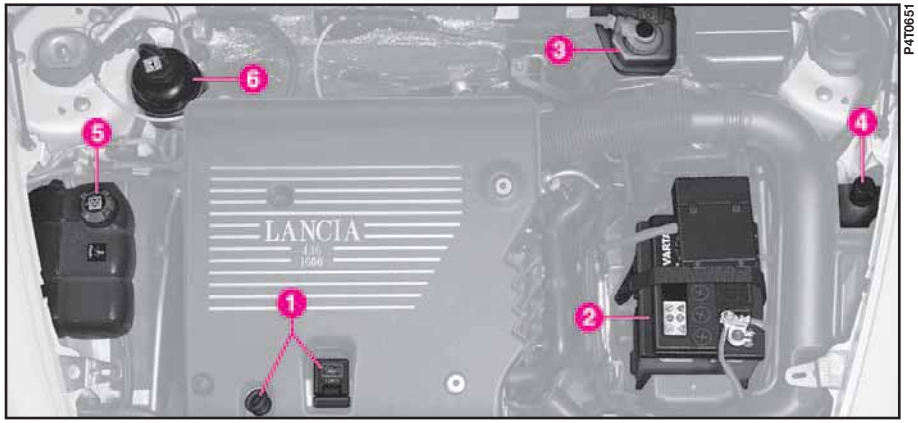


fig. 1 - 1.6 version

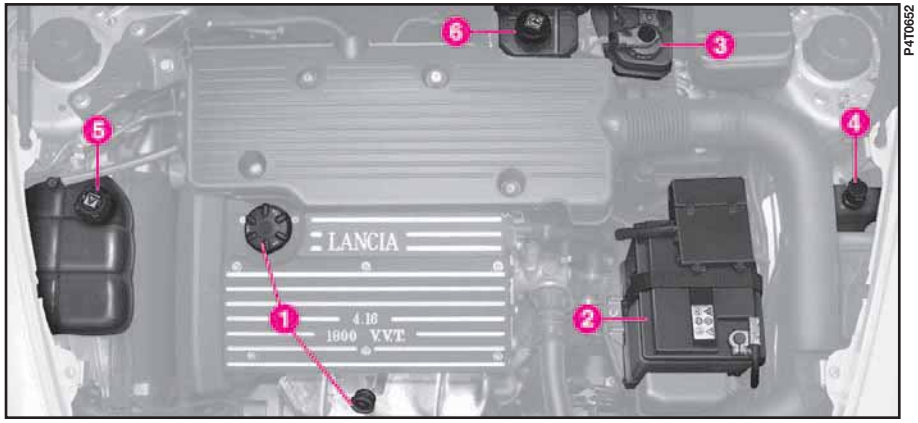
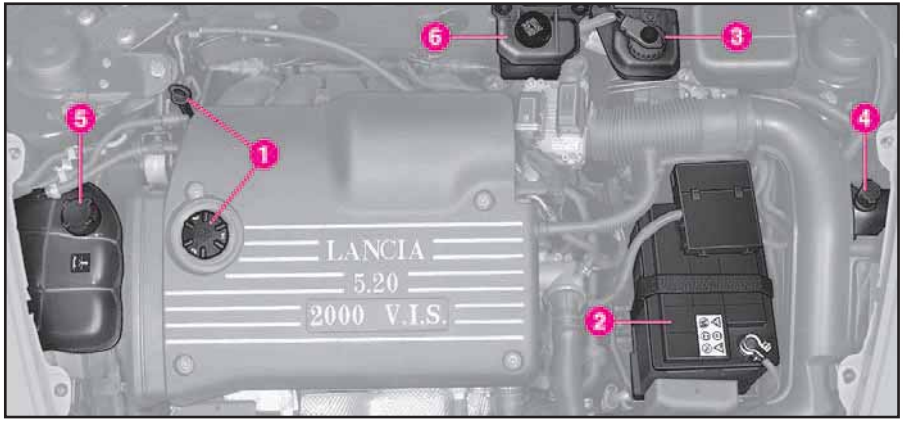


fig. 2 - 1.8 version



P4T0653

fig. 3 - 2.0 version

1. Engine oil - **2.** Battery - **3.** Brake fluid - **4.** Windscreen washer fluid - **5.** Engine coolant - **6.** Power steering fluid.

P4T0654

fig. 4 - 1.9 jtd version

1. Engine oil - **2.** Battery - **3.** Brake fluid - **4.** Windscreen washer fluid - **5.** Engine coolant - **6.** Power steering fluid.

1. Engine oil - **2.** Battery - **3.** Brake fluid - **4.** Windscreen washer fluid - **5.** Engine coolant - **6.** Power steering fluid.

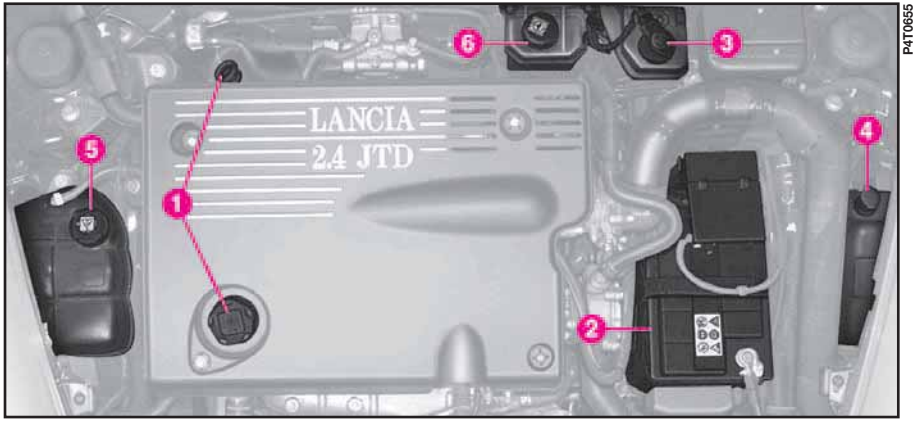


fig. 5 - 2.4 jtd version

ENGINE OIL (fig. 6-7-8-9-10)

Check engine oil with the car on level ground and while the engine is still warm (approximately five minutes after stopping the engine).

The oil level should be included between the **MIN** and **MAX** reference lines on the dipstick.

If the oil level is near or even below the **MIN** line, pour in oil through the filler hole until it reaches the **MAX** line.

The oil level must never exceed the **MAX** line.

Be very careful under the bonnet: you risk burning yourself. Remember that when the engine is hot, the fan can start up and cause injuries.

In 1.6 version, lift the upper part of the cap and remove it.

During the beginning of the car's life the engine is be tuned in. Engine oil consumption can only be considered stabilised after the first 5,000 - 6,000 km.

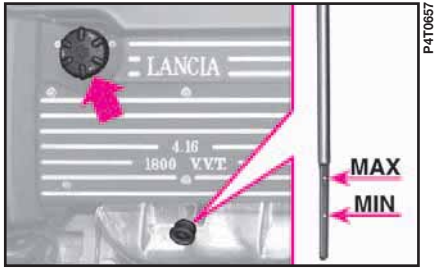


fig. 7 - 1.8 version

fig. 9 - 1.9 jtd version

fig. 6 - 1.6 version

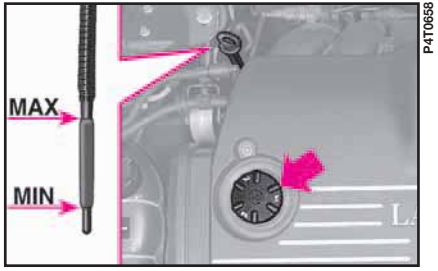


fig. 8 - 2.0 version

fig. 10 - 2.4 jtd version

Do not add oil with different specifications from the oil already in the engine. Only the use of semi-synthetic oil (see "Lubricant and fluid specifications" in the "Technical specification" chapter) can ensure the distances prescribed in the Service Schedule.

IMPORTANT After topping up or changing the oil, let the engine turn for a few seconds and wait a few minutes after stopping it before you check the level.

Used engine oil and replaced oil filters contain substances which can harm the environment. We recommend you have the car seen to at a Lancia Dealership for the oil and filter change. It is suitably equipped for disposing of used oil and filters in an environmentally-friendly way that complies with the law.

ENGINE COOLANT (fig. 11)

Do not remove the reservoir cap when the engine is hot: you risk scalding yourself.

Check coolant level when the engine is cold. The level should be included between the **MIN** and **MAX** reference lines on the reservoir.

If the level is low, top up slowly through the filler A on the reservoir with a 50-50% mixture of distilled water and **PARAFLU UP** fluid as required.

The engine cooling system works with PARAFLU UP. Top up only with the same fluid contained in the cooling circuit. PARAFLU UP cannot be mixed with other fluids. Should this take place, do not start the engine and contact Lancia Dealership.

The cooling system is pressurised. If necessary, replace the cap with a genuine spare part to avoid compromising the system efficiency.

fig. 11

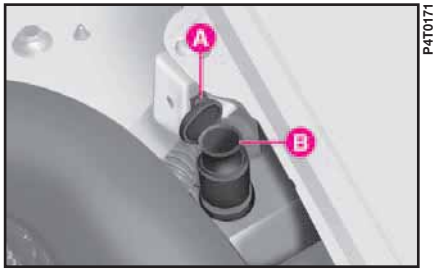


fig. 12

WINDSCREEN/REAR WINDOW/HEADLIGHT WASHER FLUID (fig. 12)

To top up, remove cap **A** and filler **B** and pour in a mixture of water and **TUTELA PROFESSIONAL SC 35** fluid in the following concentrations:

30% of **TUTELA PROFESSIONAL SC 35** and 70% of water in summer.

50% of **TUTELA PROFESSIONAL SC 35** and 50% of water in winter.

If the temperature falls below –20°C, use **TUTELA PROFESSIONAL SC 35** undiluted.

IMPORTANT Do not travel with the windscreen washer reservoir empty. The windscreen washer is fundamental for improving visibility.

POWER STEERING FLUID (fig. 13-14)

Check the oil level when the engine is cold. It should be included between the **MIN** and **MAX** reference lines on the reservoir.

When the oil is hot, the level can exceed the **MAX** reference line.

To top up, loosen cap **A** and pour oil into the reservoir.

IMPORTANT Make sure that the oil has the same specifications as the oil in the system.

Do not let the power steering fluid come into contact with hot engine parts. It catches fire very easily.

Oil consumption is extremely low. If the oil level needs topping up again a s short period of time, have the system checked for leakage at a **Lancia Dealership**.

BRAKE AND HYDRAULIC CLUTCH FLUID (fig. 15)

Check that the level of the fluid in the reservoir is at the **MAX** line.

From time to time check the instrument panel warning light by pressing the reservoir cap (with the ignition key at **MAR**), the warning light (!) should come on.

Use **DOT 4** fluid only for topping up. We recommend **TUTELA TOP 4** that the braking system was original filled with.

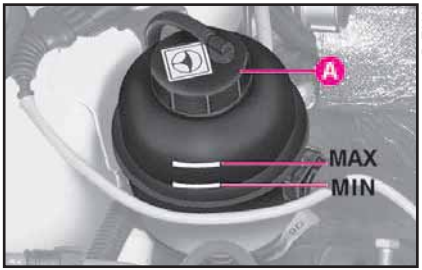


fig. 13 - 1.6 version

fig. 14 - 1.8 - 2.0
1.9 jtd - 2.4 jtd versions

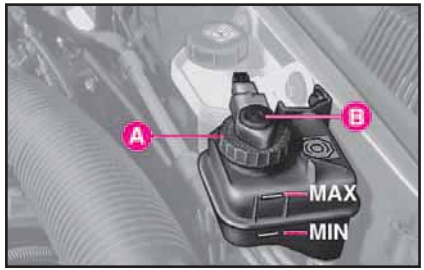


fig. 15

Loosen cap **A** holding sensor **B** still.

The fluid level in the reservoir should never exceed the **MAX** reference line.

IMPORTANT Brake fluid is hygroscopic (meaning it absorbs humidity). This is why the fluid should be changed more frequently than shown in the Service Schedule if the car is mainly driven in areas with a high percentage of humidity in the air.

Make sure that the highly corrosive brake fluid does not drip onto the paintwork. If it does, wash it off immediately with water.

The symbol ◎ on the container indicates synthetic brake fluid distinguishing it from mineral fluid. Using mineral type fluid would damage the special rubber braking system gaskets beyond repair.

AIR CLEANER

The air cleaner is connected to the air temperature and intake sensors which send the electrical signals required for the correct operation of the injection and ignition system to the control unit.

Consequently, the cleaner must always be in perfect conditions to ensure correct operation of the engine and in order to contain consumption and exhaust emissions.

The air cleaner replacement procedure is provided for indicative purposes only. Have the operation carried out at a Lancia Dealership.
Car safety can be compromised if the cleaner replacement procedure herein described is not carried out correctly.

Replace the air cleaner more frequently than shown in the Service Schedule if the car is used on dusty roads.

The cleaner can be damaged if it is cleaned and consequently the engine can be damaged.

REPLACEMENT (fig. 16)

Loosen the screws **A**, lift the cover **B** and remove the filtering element to be replaced.

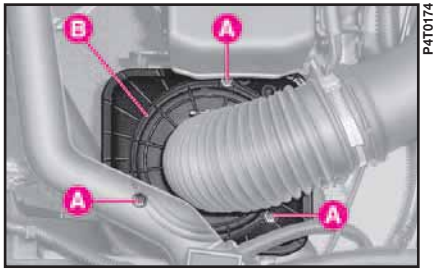


fig. 16

POLLEN FILTER

Have the pollen filter (**fig. 17**) replaced at a **Lancia Dealership**.

If the car is often used in dusty or extremely polluted environments, you should change the filter element more frequently. It should be changed especially if the amount of air introduced into the passenger compartment is introduced.

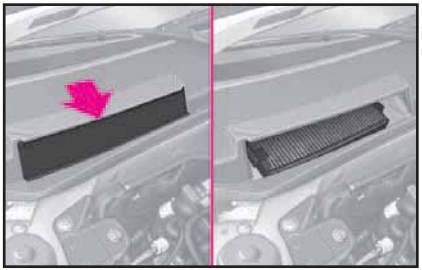


fig. 17

DIESEL FILTER

(1.9 jtd - 2.4 jtd versions)

DRAINING THE CONDENSE (fig. 18)

The presence of water in the fuel feed circuit can severely damage the injection system and make the engine misfire. Go to a Lancia Dealership as soon as possible when the warning light comes on to have the bleeding operation carried out.

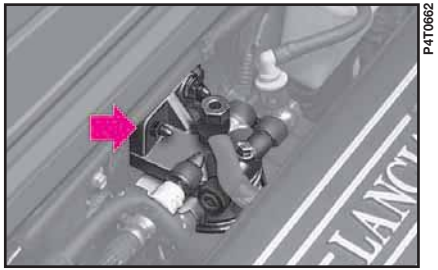


fig. 18

BATTERY

The battery is located in the engine compartment in point **2** (**fig. 1**, **2**, **3**, **4**, **5**).

The battery is of the "limited maintenance" type. Under normal conditions it will not need to be topped up with distilled water.

See " In an emergency" for instructions on how to recharge the battery.

REPLACING THE BATTERY

If required, replace the battery with a genuine spare part presenting the same specifications.

Should the battery be replaced, the anti-crushing safety system of the electric windows must be reinitialised. See "Electric windows" at chapter "Getting to know your car".

If a battery with different specifications is fitted, the frequencies shown in the "Service schedule" in this chapter will no longer apply. Refer to the instructions provided by the battery manufacturer.

Batteries contain substances that are very harmful for the environment. You are advised to have the battery changed at a Lancia Dealership. It is properly equipped for disposing of used batteries in an environmentally-friendly way that complies with the law.

CHECKING THE BATTERY FLUID LEVEL (electrolyte)

Check the electrolyte level and top up, if required, at the frequency shown in the "Service schedule" in this chapter. Have this operation carried out at a **Lancia Dealership**.

The liquid in the battery is poisonous and corrosive. Do not let it touch the skin or eyes. Do not bring naked flames or possible sources of sparks near to the battery: risk of fire and explosion.

Incorrect fitting of electrical and electronic accessories can seriously damage the car.

USEFUL ADVICE FOR LENGTHENING THE LIFE OF YOUR BATTERY

When you park the car, ensure the doors, boot and bonnet are closed properly. The ceiling lights must be off.

Do not keep accessories (e.g. sound system, hazard lights etc.) switched on for a long time when the engine is not running.

IMPORTANT A battery which is kept at a charge of less than 50% for any length of time will be damaged by sulphation leading to a reduction in cranking power and a higher risk of the battery electrolyte freezing (this may even occur at –10°C).

If the car is inactive for a long period of time, refer to "Storing the car" in the chapter "Getting to know your car".

If you want to add accessories after buying the car (alarm, free – hand phone kit, radio navigator and anti–theft system, etc.) visit a **Lancia Dealership**. They can suggest the most suitable accessories to get and check whether the electric system can support the required load or whether a larger capacity battery and alternator are required.

These devices in fact in take electricity also when the ignition key is removed (car parked, engine off) and can gradually drain the battery.

The overall intake of these devices (standard and after-market) must be less that 0.6 mA x Ah (of the battery), as shown in the following table.

Battery	Maximum idle intake
50 Ah	30 mA
60 Ah	36 mA
70 Ah	42 mA

It is also important to remember that high intake devices (such as bottle warmers, vacuum cleaners, cellular phones, etc.) will speed up battery discharging **when powered when the engine is not running**.

IMPORTANT Please note that when installing additional systems in the car incorrect wiring can be dangerous, especially when concerning safety systems.

BATTERY WITH HYDROMETER

Description

For versions/markets where applicable, the battery can be fitted with an indicator for checking the electrolyte level and battery charge. The battery is of the "Low Maintenance" type fitted with an indicator; therefore, under normal conditions of use topping up the electrolyte with distilled water is not required. A periodical check is however necessary to make sure it is in efficient conditions through the indicator on the battery cover which should be dark in colour with a green central area.

If the indicator is a bright colour, or dark without the green central area, contact a **Lancia Dealership**.

Checking the battery charge

The quality of the battery charge can be checked through the indicator. Depending on the colour of the indicator, proceed as described in the table below or on the label on the battery.

Bright white colour	Top up electrolyte	Contact a **Lancia Dealership**
Dark colour without green central area	Low battery charge	Charge the battery (advisable to contact a **Lancia Dealership**)
Dark colour with green central area	Electrolyte level and charge sufficient	No action needed

ELECTRONIC CONTROL UNITS

When the car is being used normally, special measures are not necessary.

The following instructions must be followed very carefully, however, if you work on the electrical system or in cases where emergency starting is necessary:

– Never disconnect the battery from the electrical system while the engine is running.

– Disconnect the battery from the electrical system if you are recharging it. The modern battery chargers can discharge voltage up to 20V.

– Never perform emergency start–ups with a battery charger. Always use an auxiliary battery.

– Be particularly careful when connecting the battery to the electrical system. Make sure that the polarity is correct and that the connection is efficient.

– Do not connect or disconnect the terminals of the electronic units while the ignition key is at **MAR**.

– Do not check polarity through sparking.

– Disconnect the electronic units if you are electrically welding the car body. Remove the units if temperatures exceed 80°C (special operations on the bodywork, etc.).

Modifications or repairs to the electrical system carried out incorrectly and without bearing the features of the system in mind can cause malfunctions with the risk of fire.

SPARK PLUGS

The cleanness and soundness of the spark plugs (**fig. 19**) are very important for keeping the engine efficient and polluting emissions down.

The appearance of the spark plug, if examined by an expert eyes, is a good way of pinpointing a problem even if it has nothing to do with the ignition system. Therefore, if the engine has problems, it is important to have the spark plugs checked at a **Lancia Dealership**.

fig. 19

The spark plugs must be changed at the times specified in the Service Schedule. Only use the type of plugs indicated. If the heat ratio is less than required or the life specified is not guaranteed, problems can arise.

	Spark plug
1.6	LANCIA RC10YCC
	LANCIA BKR5EZ
	Champion RC10YCC
	NGK BKR5EZ
1.8	LANCIA RC10YCC
	LANCIA BKR6EZ
	Champion RC10YCC
	NGK BKR6EZ
2.0	LANCIA RC8BYC
	Champion RC8BYC

WHEELS AND TYRES

TYRE PRESSURE

Check the pressure of each tyre, including the spare, every two weeks or so (every month anyway) and before long journeys.

The pressure must be checked when the tyre is rested and cold.

It is normal for the pressure to rise when you are driving. If you have to check or restore the pressure when the tyres are warm, remember that the pressure value must be 0.3 bar above the specified value.

Tyre pressure must be correct to ensure good road holding.

Wrong pressure causes uneven wear of the tyres (**fig. 20**):

A - Correct pressure: tyre wears evenly

B - Under inflated tyre: shoulder tread wear

C – Over-inflated tyre: centre tread wear.

If the pressure is too low the tyre overheats and this can cause it serious damage.

Tyres must be replaced when the tread wears down to 1.6 mm. In any case, comply with the laws in the country where the car is being driven.

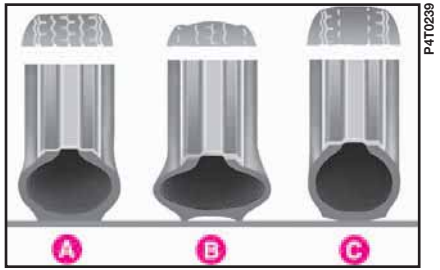


fig. 20

IMPORTANT

As far as possible avoid sharp braking and screech starts.

Be careful not to hit the kerb, potholes or other obstacles hard. Driving for long stretches over bumpy roads can damage the tyres.

Periodically check that the tyres have no cuts in the sidewalls, abnormal swelling or irregular tyre wear. If any of these occur, have the car seen to at a **Lancia Dealership**.

Avoid overloading your car: this can seriously damage wheels and tyres.

If you get a flat tyre, stop immediately and change it so as not to damage the tyre, the wheel, the suspension and the steering.

Tyres age even if they are not used very much. Cracking of the tread rubber and the sidewalls are a sign of this ageing.

In any case, if the tyres have been fitted for more than six years they should be examined by an expert who can judge whether they are still fit for use. Remember to check the spare tyre particularly carefully too.

If a replacement is necessary, always use new tyres and avoid using ones the origin of which you are not certain about.

The car fits tubeless tyres. Under no circumstances use an inner tube with these tyres.

If you replace a tyre it is a good idea to change the inflation valve, too.

To ensure the front and rear tyres all wear evenly, you are advised to change the tyres over every 10-15 thousand kilometres keeping them on the same side of the car so as not to reverse the direction of rotation.

Do not change the tyres over in criss-cross fashion by moving a tyre from the left hand side of the car to the right and vice versa.

RUBBER TUBING

Follow the Service Schedule to the letter as concerns braking, power steering and fuel line rubber tubing. Ozone, high temperatures and long absence of fluid in the system can in fact cause the hardening and cracking of the pipes with possible loss of fluid. A careful check is therefore essential.

WINDSCREEN WIPERS

BLADES

Periodically clean the rubber part with suitable products. We recommend **TUTELA PROFESSIONAL SC 35**.

Change the blades if the rubber edge is warped or worn out. You should in any case change them approximately once a year.

Travelling with worn wiper blades is dangerous because it reduces visibility in bad weather.

Some simple steps can reduce potential damage to the blades:

– If the temperature falls to below zero, make sure the rubber blade is not frozen to the windscreen. If necessary, free it with a de-icing compound.

– Remove any snow that has settled on the glass: besides saving the blades you will avoid straining the electric windscreen wiper motor and causing it to overheat.

– Do not operate the windscreen wipers on dry glass.

Checking the blades

Before checking, clean the windscreen and rubber blades carefully with warm water and **TUTELA PROFESSIONAL SC 35** windscreen washing fluid. The windscreen should be perfectly clean and not greasy. If required, complete the cleaning operation with degreasing products (ammonia based) or degreasing polishes.

The blades must also be perfectly clean before starting the check. If required, clean the corners with warm water and soap.

1) Check the blades carefully. They should not be broken or damaged in any part. Replace both the blades if they are broken or damaged.

2) If the blades are intact, continue by checking the operation. Operate the windscreen washer and the wipers. If the blades clean the windscreen perfectly they can be kept. If not, replace them both.

Replacing the blades (fig. 21)

To replace rear window wiper blades in Station Wagon versions, refer to the specific chapter.

To replace the windscreen wiper blades:

1) Lift the windscreen wiper arm.

2) Press the lock spring tab and remove the blade **A** from arm **B**.

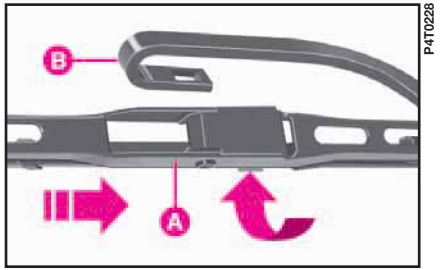


fig. 21

3) Insert the new blade in the windscreen wiper arm until the lock spring clicks.

IMPORTANT After replacing, make sure that the blades are correctly fastened to the windscreen wiper arm.

SPRAY NOZZLES (fig. 22)

If there is no jet of liquid, first make sure that there is liquid in the reservoir (see "Checking fluid levels" in this chapter).

Then make sure that the holes in the nozzles are not clogged up. Use a pin for this if necessary.

The windscreen washer jets **A** can be directed by adjusting the inclination of the nozzles. Direct the spray so that it reaches the highest point reached by the blades.

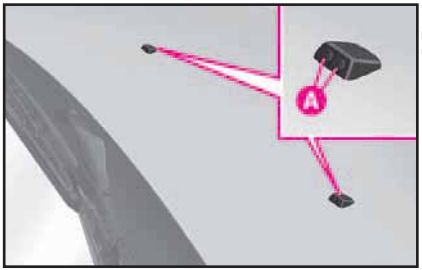


fig. 22

HEADLIGHT WASHERS (where fitted)

Regularly check that the nozzles (**fig. 23**) are intact and clean.

The headlight washers are automatically switched on when the windscreen washer is operated and the headlights are on.

fig. 23

CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM

During the winter, the climate control system must be turned on at least once a month for about ten minutes.

Before summer, have the system checked at a **Lancia Dealership**.

The system is filled with R134a refrigerant which will not pollute the environment in the event of leakage. Under no circumstances should R12 fluid be used as it is incompatible with the system components and contains CFCS.

BODYWORK

PROTECTING THE CAR FROM ATMOSPHERIC AGENTS

The main causes of rust are:

– atmospheric pollution

– salt and humidity in the atmosphere (coastal or very hot and humid areas)

– environmental conditions that are specific to the season.

In addition, the abrasiveness of dust in the atmosphere and sand carried by the wind as well as mud and stones kicked up by other cars must not be underestimated.

For your Lybra, LANCIA has used leading– edge technological solutions to effectively protect the body from rust.

These are the most important:

– Painting systems and products that make the car particularly resistant to rust and scratching.

– The use of zinc-plated sheet steel which is highly resistant to rust.

– The spraying of the underbody, engine compartment, inside the wheelhouses and other parts with wax– based products with a high protective capacity.

– Spraying plastic-coating materials to protect the most exposed points: under the door, inside the wings, the edges etc.

– The use of "open" box sections to prevent condensation and water from building up and rusting the inside of the parts.

BODY AND UNDERBODY WARRANTY

Your Lybra is covered by warranty against any original structural or body part being perforated by rust. Refer to the Warranty Booklet for the general terms.

TIPS FOR KEEPING THE BODY IN GOOD CONDITIONS

Paintwork

The paintwork is not only to make your car look attractive but also to protect the steel.

If the paint is scuffed or scratched deeply you are therefore advised to touch up as necessary to prevent rust from forming.

Only use genuine products when touching up the paintwork (see the "Technical specifications" chapter).

Ordinary maintenance of the paintwork means washing it. The frequency you should do this depends on the conditions and the environment the car is driven in. For example, you should wash your car more often if it is driven is areas with a high level of air pollution or on road sprinkled with saltwash.

Detergents pollute water. For this reason, the car must be washed in an area equipped for the collection and purification of the liquids used while washing.

To wash the car properly:

1) Remove the aerial from the roof to prevent damaging it when washing the car in an automatic carwash.

2) Wash the body using a low pressure jet of water.

3) Wipe a sponge with a slightly soapy solution over the bodywork, frequently rinsing the sponge.

4) Rinse well with water and dry with a jet of air or a chamois leather.

When drying the car, be careful to get at those parts which are not so easily seen e.g. the door frames, bonnet and around the headlights where water can most readily collect. You should leave the car out in the open so that any water remaining can evaporate more easily.

Do not wash the car after it has been parked in the sun or while the bonnet is hot: it could take the shine off the paint.

Outside plastic parts must be cleaned following the usual car washing procedure.

Where possible avoid parking the car under trees; the resinous substances that certain species of tree shed dull the paintwork and increase the possibility of rust forming.

IMPORTANT Bird droppings must be washed off immediately and with great care as their acid is particularly aggressive.

Windows

Use specific window cleaners to clean the windows. Use very clean cloths to avoid scratching the glass or damaging its transparency.

IMPORTANT To prevent damage to the electric heater element, wipe the inside of the heated rear window gently in the same direction as the elements.

Engine compartment

At the end of each winter season, carefully clean the engine compartment. Have this done at a garage.

IMPORTANT The engine compartment should be washed while the engine is cold and with the ignition key at **STOP**. After washing, make sure that the various protections (e.g. rubber boots and various guards) have not be removed or damaged.

Detergents pollute water. For this reason, the car must be washed in an area equipped for the collection and purification of the liquids used while washing.

INTERIORS

From time to time check that water has not collected under the mats (from dripping shoes, umbrellas, etc.) which could cause the steel to rust.

Never use inflammable products like fuel oil ether or rectified petrol for cleaning inside the car. The electrostatic discharges generated when rubbing to clean may cause fire. Do not keep aerosol cans in the car. There is the risk they might explode. Aerosol cans must never be exposed to a temperature above 50°C; when the weather starts to get hot the temperature inside the car might go well beyond that figure.

PLASTIC PARTS INSIDE THE CAR

Use special products designed not to alter the appearance of the components.

IMPORTANT Do not use alcohol or petrol to clean the instrument panel.

CLEANING ALCANTARA SEATS

Alcantara upholstery is easy to clean. Follow the same instructions provided for velvet upholstery.

CLEANING VELVET SEATS AND FABRICS

– Remove dust with a soft brush and vacuum cleaner. Use a moist brush to clean velvet upholstery.

– Brush the seats with a damp sponge with water and a neutral soap.

CLEANING LEATHER AND IMITATION LEATHER SEATS

– Remove the dry dirt with a chamois leather or very slightly moist loth without exerting too much pressure.

– Remove liquid or grease stains with a dry absorbent cloth without rubbing. Then wipe with a chamois leather or soft cloth moistened with water and neutral soap. If the stain does not come out, use a special cleaning compound being particularly careful to follow the instructions for use.

IMPORTANT Never use alcohol or alcohol-based products.

CLEANING SUHARA SEATS

Follow procedure **A** or **B** according to the type of stain to remove (see the table below).

Type of stain	Procedure
Oil, grease	B
Chocolate	A (lukewarm water)
Coffee	A (lukewarm water)
Milk	A (water and detergent)
Wax	B (using a palette knife)
Fruit	A (cold water)
Ballpoint pen	A (water and detergent)
Mud	A (water and ammonia)
Pencil	B

Procedure A

Remove the stain using a cloth moistened with water or with a solution of water and water-based detergent or ammonia (2 tablespoons per litre of water) without rubbing.

Procedure B

Remove the stain using a white cloth moistened with undiluted or diluted perchloro-ethylene without rubbing.

LYBRA STATION WAGON

You will find all the information specific to the Lybra SW that differs from that already given in previous sections of this handbook.

The Lybra SW is a car that, as well as sharing all the features of safety, driving pleasure and environmental-friendliness with the Lybra saloon, offers you the extra possibility of having an extensive loading capacity permanently at your disposal.

REAR WINDOW WASHER/WIPER

OPERATION (fig. 1)

This device only works with the ignition key at **MAR**:

To operate the rear window wiper, turn the ring **A** to ⌔. The rear window wiper will flick.

Push stalk **B** forward to operate the rear window washer. It will be switched off when the stalk is released.

The wiper will be operated automatically for a few flicks when the rear window washer is operated.

The rear window wiper will be automatically operated for some seconds when the windscreen wiper is working and reverse gear is engaged.

REPLACING THE BLADES (fig. 2)

Replace the entire rear window wiper blade and arm assembly.

1) Lift the cover **A** and remove the arm by loosening the nut **B** fastening it to the pin.

2) Position the new arm correctly and fasten the nut.

3) Lower the cover.

SPRAY NOZZLES (fig. 3)

If there is no jet of liquid, first make sure that there is liquid in the reservoir (see "Car maintenance").

The rear window washer jets can be directed by adjusting the inclination of the nozzles **A**.

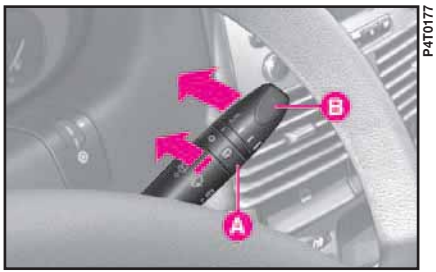


fig. 1

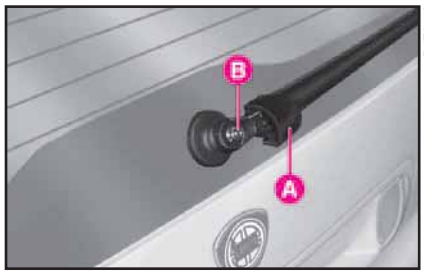


fig. 2

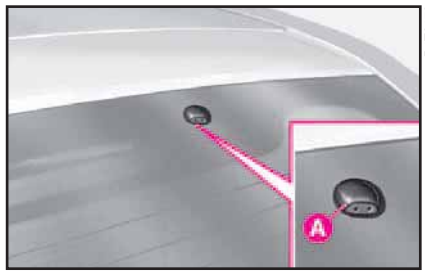


fig. 3

INTERIOR LIGHTS

CENTRAL REAR CEILING LIGHT (fig. 4)

The ceiling light will come on when the switch **A** is in position **0** and the tailgate is opened.

The ceiling light will come on regardless of the doors and tailgate when the switch is in central position **1**.

The ceiling light will be off regardless of the doors and tailgate when the switch is moved to the left (position **2**).

IMPORTANT Make sure that the switch is not in position **1** when leaving the car. The ceiling light will go out automatically after approximately 15 minutes if the tailgate is left open with the switch in position **0**.

SOUND SYSTEM

REAR SPEAKERS (fig. 5)

The rear speakers **A** are housed in the side boot shelves.

AERIAL

The aerial is located on the car roof.

Remember to remove the aerial from the roof before washing the car in an automatic car wash to prevent damaging it.

CD PLAYER - CD-ROM DRIVE FOR LANCIA ICS WITH NAVIGATION SYSTEM (fig. 6-7) (where fitted)

The CD player **A** and the CD-ROM drive **B** for the Lancia ICS with navigation system are housed in a compartment on the left-hand side of the boot under flap **C**.

Pull handle **D** to remove the clipped on flap. To refit, insert the lower part first and then clip the flap back.

Compartment **E** for storing the CDs can be found over the compartment.

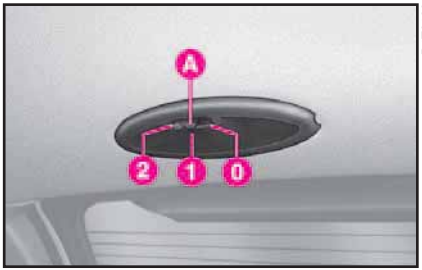


fig. 4

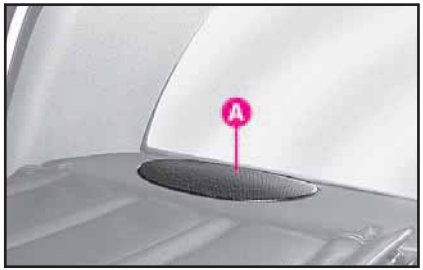


fig. 5

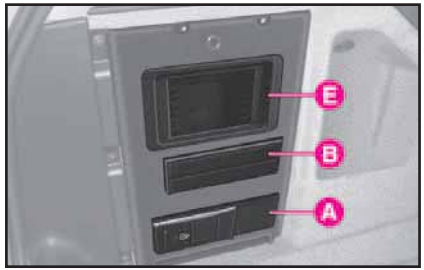


fig. 6

See “Sound system” in this handbook for CD player instructions.

See the booklet attached to this Owner Handbook for instructions on the Lancia ICS with navigation system and the CD-ROM drive.

HI-FI AUDIO SYSTEM (where fitted)

Subwoofer (fig. 8-9)

A 14 dm^3 bass box **B** is located in a compartment on the right-hand side of the boot under flap **A**.

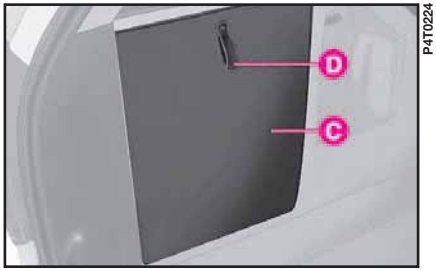


fig. 7

Pull handle **C** to remove the clipped on flap.

To refit, insert the lower part first and then clip the flap back.

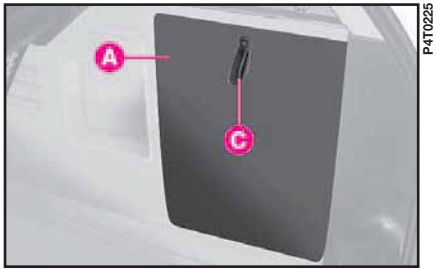


fig. 8

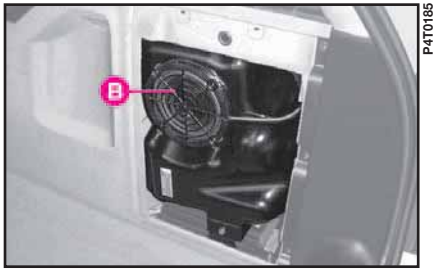


fig. 9

REAR TRIM AUTOMATIC CONTROL SYSTEM

(where fitted)

The car is equipped with a rear suspension self-bearing hydraulic-pneumatic system with built-in self-levelling functions (thanks to an active device fitted in the shock absorber) and dampening functions in the place of the traditional shock absorber system.

The trim is lowered when the car is loaded (passengers, boot) according to the stiffness of the spring system and the load. However, as soon as the car starts off, the system employs the movements induced by the road surface on the wheels to increase its supporting capacity and lift the body to a pre-defined trim regardless of the load conditions.

The self-levelling rear suspensions automatically keep the rear of the car's height – and consequently its trim – constant regardless of the load in the boot.

When using the boot, make sure the load you are carrying does not exceed the permitted weight (see "Technical specifications"). The transported load and its arrangement in the boot will however effect road holding also if the trim is kept constant by the automatic system.

BOOT

When using the boot, make sure the load you are carrying does not exceed the maximum allowed weight (see the "Technical Specifications" chapter). Also ensure the items in the boot are arranged properly and fastened with straps to the specific hooks to prevent them being thrown forwards and injuring passengers should you brake sharply.

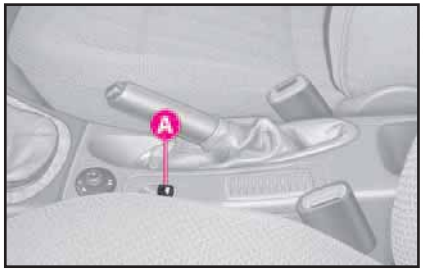


fig. 10

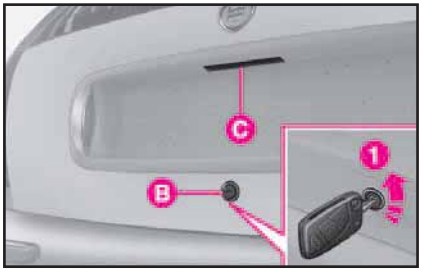


fig. 11

OPENING THE TAILGATE (fig. 10-11)

Lift switch **A** or insert the key in lock **B** at turn it to position **1** to open the tailgate.

The tailgate is locked by the central door locking system.

Use handle **C** over the lock to open the tailgate.

OPENING THE TAILGATE WITH THE REMOTE CONTROL

The tailgate can be opened from the outside by pressing **D** (**fig. 12**) on the ignition key.

The tailgate can be opened also when the central door locking system and the electronic alarm (where fitted) are on.

In this case, the alarm system implements the following strategy:

– volumetric protection off

– anti-lift sensor off

– boot sensor off.

The surveillance functions will be restored when the tailgate is closed.

CLOSING THE TAILGATE (**fig. 13**)

Use a handle **A** to close the tailgate.

CEILING LIGHT (**fig. 14**)

Ceiling light **B** on the right-hand side of the boot comes on when the tailgate is opened. The light goes out either when the tailgate is closed or after a few minutes if the tailgate is left open. In the latter case, close and open the tailgate again to switch the light back on.

fig. 12

fig. 13

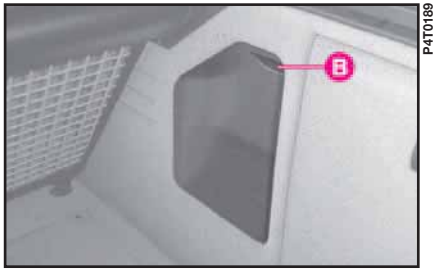


fig. 14

UTILITY COMPARTMENTS (fig. 15)

These compartments are located on the right and left-hand sides of the boot. Pull handle **A** to open the clipped-on flap **B** and remove it. To refit, insert the lower part first and then clip the flap back.

The left-hand compartment is set up to house the CD player and the CD-ROM drive for the Lancia ICS with navigator system (where fitted).

The subwoofer for cars with HI-FI sound system is housed in the right-hand compartment.

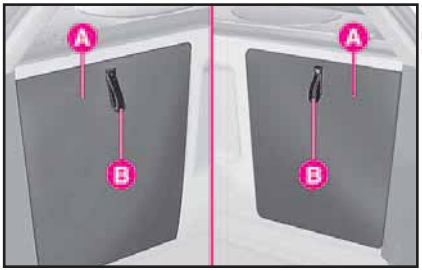


fig. 15

ODDMENT TRAY (fig. 16)

The oddment tray **A** is behind the rear seat back.

The tray can be tilted by means of handle **B** to reach the boot from the passenger compartment.

To remove the tray, tilt it and remove the side pins from their recesses **C**. To reposition the tray, insert the side pin in recesses **C** and turn it forwards.

In the event of an accident or sudden braking, the objects placed on the tray can be thrown around the passenger compartment can cause injuries.

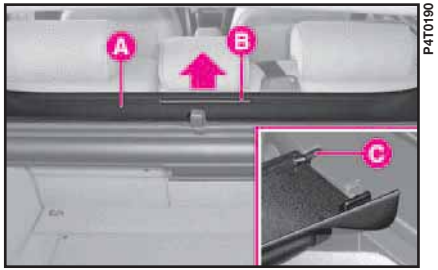


fig. 16

LUGGAGE COVER (fig. 17-18-19)

The semi-rigid luggage cover **A** can be rolled up and removed.

To roll it up, remove the two rear pins **B** from their recesses **C** and release the Velcro strips **D** on the sides.

fig. 17

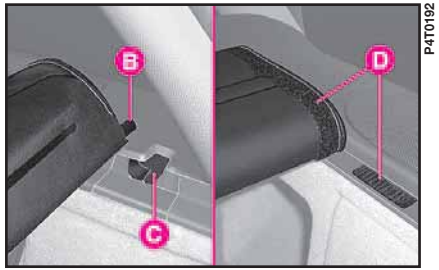


fig. 18

To remove the cover, roll it up and remove the two front pins **E**.

To refit the cover, insert the front pins then extend it and insert the rear pins.

To not place heavy objects on the cover: you could damage it.

In the event of an accident or sudden braking, the objects placed on the cover can be thrown around the passenger compartment can cause injuries.

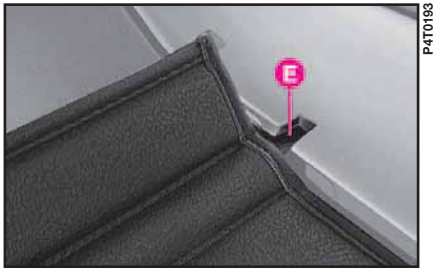


fig. 19

PASSENGER COMPARTMENT SEPARATION NET (fig. 20-21-22-23) (where fitted)

The net for separating the passenger compartment and the boot is contained on a double reel **A**. The upper and lower sections of the net can be opened separately.

Hook the upper part of the separation net to supports **B**.

Hook the lower part of the separation net to hooks **D**.

The reel can be removed from the boot after wrapping up the upper and lower sections. To remove the reel, turn the knob on the right-hand side forwards until the red triangle appears. Lift the right-hand side of the reel first and then the left-hand side. Remove the reel from the boot (**fig. 23**).

To reposition the reel, insert the left-hand side first and then the right-hand side. Turn the knob backwards until it locks.

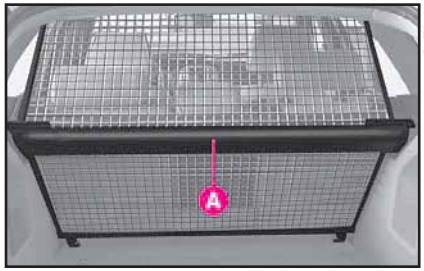


fig. 20

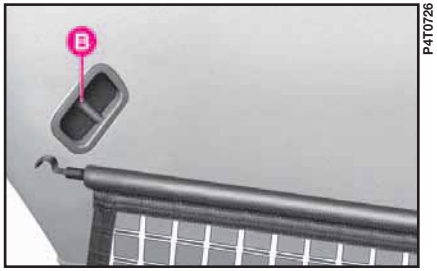


fig. 21

fig. 22

ANCHORING THE LOAD (fig. 24-25)

The load can be secured with belts attached to the specific rings in the boot corners.

The rings can also be used to fasten the luggage net (optional, can be purchased at a **Lancia Dealership**).

Heavy loads which are not securely anchored could seriously injure passengers in the event of an accident.

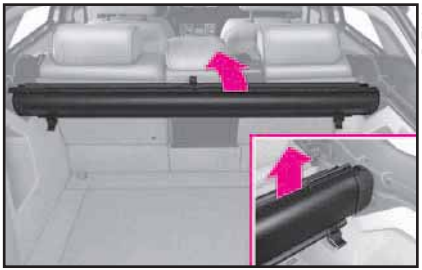


fig. 23

REVERSIBLE FLOOR MAT

The floor mat can be reversed. Remove it and turn it over with the washable side facing up when carrying dirty loads.

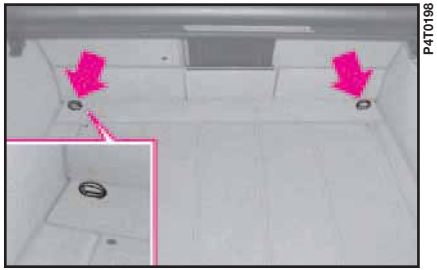


fig. 24

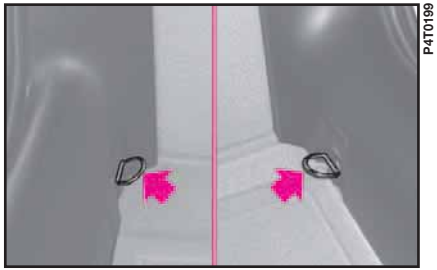


fig. 25

SKI TUNNEL (fig. 26)

The tunnel can be used to transport long objects (e.g. skis). Introduce objects into the tunnel from the boot.

1) Lower the armrest **A**.

2) Press handle **B** and lower flap **C**.

3) Remove the cover (where fitted).

Push flap **C** towards the boot to close it. It will lock automatically.

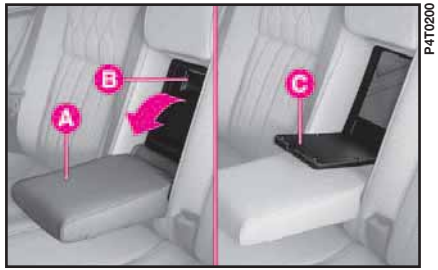


fig. 26

EXTENDING THE BOOT

The split rear seat allows to partially or totally extend the boot (one third, two thirds, or totally).

To make the most of the boot loading capacity, remove the luggage cover, the tilting oddment tray and the passenger compartment separation net (where fitted) as shown in the specific paragraphs.

To partially extend the boot (one third) (fig. 27)

Fold the left-hand seat only. You can sit two passengers in the rear seat on the right-hand side.

To partially extend the boot (two thirds) (fig. 28)

Fold the right-hand seat only. You can sit one passenger in the rear seat on the left-hand side.

To totally extend the boot (fig. 29)

Fold both side of the seat to obtain maximum boot capacity.

fig. 27

fig. 28

fig. 29

To extend the boot

1) Pull handle **A** (**fig. 30**) located in the middle of each cushion and pull it forwards in the direction of the arrow.

2) Remove the head restraints from the rear seat (see "Head restraints") and insert them in the housings on the cushion (**fig. 31**).

3) Lift the handle by the sides of the seat backs to release the seats:

B (**fig. 32**) = right-hand seat

C (**fig. 33**) = left-hand seat.

4) Lift the seat belts sideways and tilt the seat back forwards as to obtain a single load platform with the floor of the boot.

To return the seats to their normal position:

1) Move the seat belt sideways and bring the seat back to an upright position. Check that it has caught properly.

2) Tip the cushion back and make sure that the seat belt webbing is not twisted in the hidden stretches between the cushions and the seat back.

3) Refit the head restraints.

4) Refit the passenger compartment separation net (where fitted), the tilting oddment tray and the luggage cover as shown in the specific paragraphs.

IMPORTANT If there is a fairly heavy load in the boot and you are travelling at night, it is a good idea to check and adjust the height of the dipped beam headlights (see "Headlights").

fig. 30

fig. 31

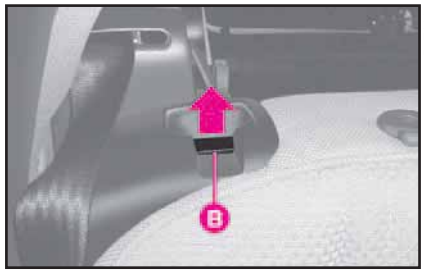


fig. 32

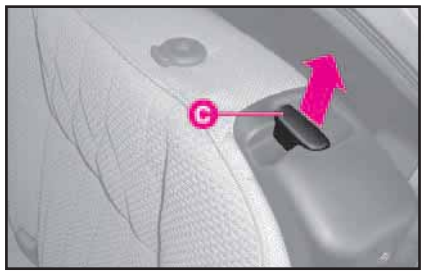


fig. 33

ROOF RACK/ SKI RACK

FASTENERS (fig. 34)

An optional set of two roof rack cross bars is available for the Lybra SW. These bars can be used to secure specific accessories for transporting objects (ski racks, windsurf racks, etc.).

The car is equipped with three pairs of securing points for the cross bars.

To fit the cross bars, remove the six caps **A** using a screwdriver as a lever in point **B** and fasten with the specific screws.

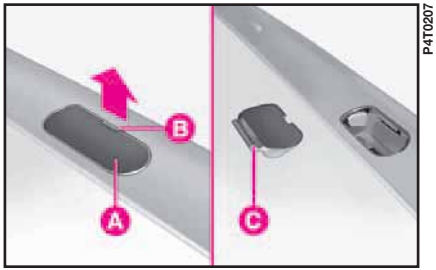


fig. 34

Keep caps **A** which will be used to cover the fastening points when the bars are removed.

To refit caps **A**, insert tab **C** and then press on the other side to fasten the caps in their housing.

After travelling a few kilometres, check that the screws securing the rack are tight.

Never exceed the permitted weight (refer to the "Technical specifications" chapter).

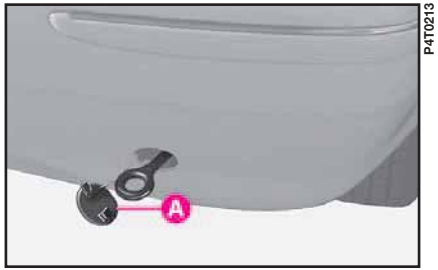


fig. 35

TOWING THE CAR OR ANOTHER VEHICLE

To fit the tow ring, remove the bumper cover **A (fig. 35)** by using a screwdriver as a lever in the specific recess.

IMPORTANT For other information, warning and precautions to be adopted when towing the car or another vehicle, see "In an emergency".

WARNING WHEN TOWING TRAILERS

Observe the speed limits that are specific to each country for vehicles towing trailers. The top speed, however, is 100 kph.

IF A TYRE IS PUNCTURED

SPARE WHEEL AND TOOLS

The car may be equipped with a space-saver or normal sized spare wheel (where fitted).

The spare wheel, the jack and the tool kit are in the boot in a compartment under the floor carpet.

To reach the compartment, open the tailgate, lift the carpet from the floor and fasten its upper edge with the specific belt **A** (**fig. 36**). The floor carpet can also be removed from the boot from the back.

Remove the shim **B** (**fig. 37**).

Release the locking device **C** (**fig. 38**). Take the tool kit **D** and the spare wheel **E** and go to the wheel to be changed

fig. 37

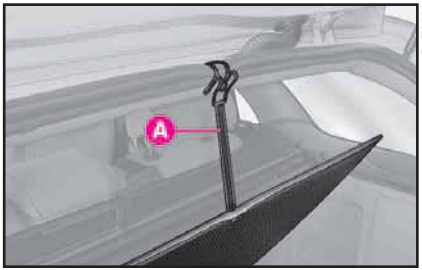


fig. 36

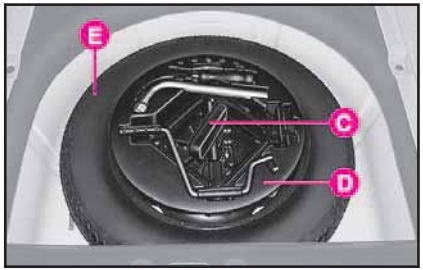


fig. 38

IMPORTANT For instructions on how to change a wheel correctly and for the warnings and the precautions to be adopted see “In an emergency”.

When you have finished, put the removed wheel, the jack and the tool kit back in the boot and fasten then correctly. Reposition the shim **B** (**fig. 37**).

Before lowering the floor carpet, fasten the belt to the carpet as shown (**fig. 39**).

If you removed the carpet from the boot, reposition it by inserting the front tabs **F** (**fig. 40**) in the respective recesses on the floor.

fig. 39

IF A BULB BURNS OUT

IMPORTANT Read the warnings and the precautions given in "In an emergency".

CENTRAL REAR CEILING LIGHT

To replace a C, 12V-C10W bulb:

1) Remove the ceiling light by levering in point **A** (**fig. 41**).

2) Remove the bulb **B** (**fig. 42**) by releasing the side contacts and replace it.

3) Refit the ceiling light by inserting side **C** first and then pressing on the other side until it clips.

fig. 41

fig. 40

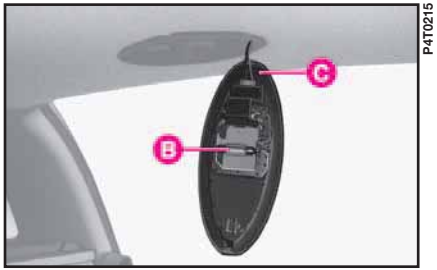


fig. 42

BOOT LIGHT (fig. 43)

To replace a **C** , 12V-C10W bulb:

1) Remove the lens by using a screwdriver as a lever on clip **A**.

2) Remove bulb **B** by releasing the side contacts and replace it.

3) Refit the lens by inserting side **C** first and then pressing on the other side to engage clip **A**.

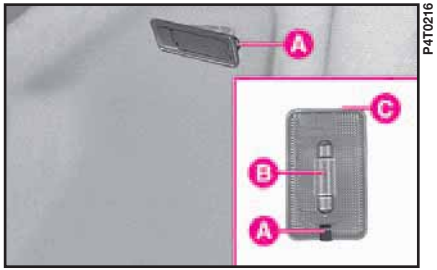


fig. 43

ADDITIONAL BRAKE LIGHTS (THIRD BRAKE LIGHT)

The light can be reached from the outside with the tailgate open.

To replace a B, 12V-H21W bulb:

1) Remove the three covers **A** (**fig. 44**) using a screwdriver as a lever in the specific recesses.

2) Loosen the screws **B** (**fig. 45**) and remove the additional brake light **C**.

3) Turn the bulb holder **D** (**fig. 46**) anticlockwise and remove it.

4) Press and turn bulb **E** (**fig. 46**) anticlockwise and remove it.

5) Fit the new bulb by pressing and turning it clockwise.

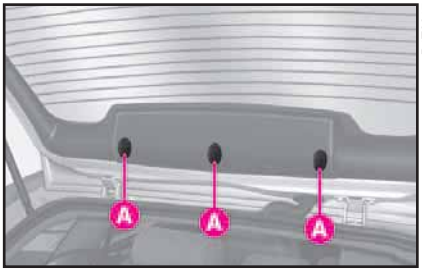


fig. 44

6) Insert the bulb holder **D** (**fig. 46**) and turn it clockwise.

7) Reposition the additional brake light on the tailgate and fasten screws **B** (**fig. 45**).

8) Fasten the caps **A** (**fig. 44**) in the recesses on the screws.

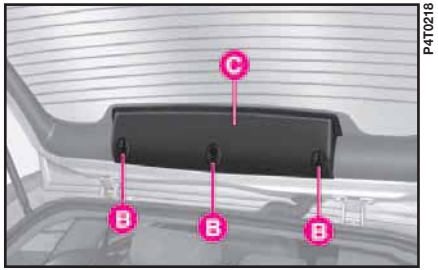


fig. 45

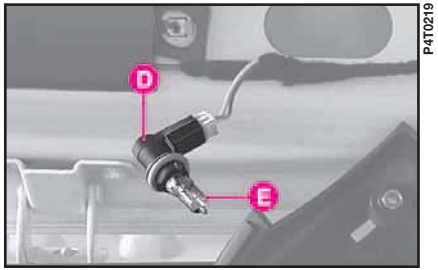


fig. 46

REAR LIGHT CLUSTER

Taillights, direction indicators, brake lights, reversing light and rear fog light

To replace a bulb:

1) Remove flap **A** (**fig. 47**) from the right-hand or left-hand utility compartment in the boot, pull handle **B** and remove the flap.

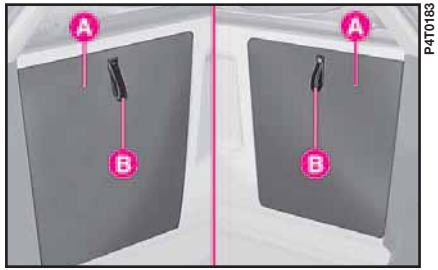


fig. 47

2) Remove the light cluster by loosening the nuts **C** (**fig. 48**) with end **A** (**fig. 49**) of the tool supplied with the car and pull it outwards without disconnecting the connector. Use end **B** (**fig. 49**) of the tool in versions with HI-FI sound system to loosen the right-hand light cluster fastening nuts. Fit the adapter **C** (**fig. 49**) provided.

3) Loosen screw **D** (**fig. 50**) and remove the bulb holder **E**.

4) Remove the bulb by pressing it slightly and turning it anticlockwise. Replace it (**fig. 51**).

F - Reversing light bulb (right-hand cluster only): B, 12V-P21W.

Rear fog light bulb (left-hand cluster only): B, 21V-P21W.

G - Upper taillight bulb: B, 12V-R10W.

H - Direction indicator bulb (orange): B, 12V-PY21W.

L - Brake light bulb: B, 12V-P21W.

5) Refit the bulb holder **E** (**fig. 50**) and fasten it with screw **D** (**fig. 50**).

6) Refit the light cluster and fasten the nuts **C** (**fig. 48**).

7) Refit the utility compartment flap by inserting the lower part first and then clipping it back.

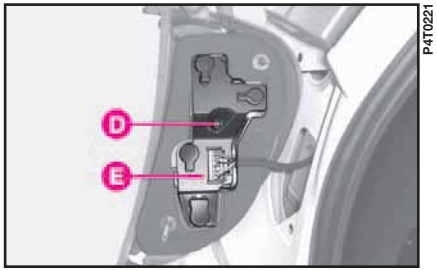


fig. 50

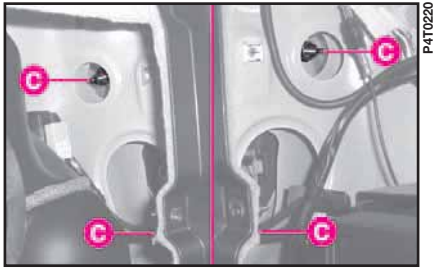


fig. 48

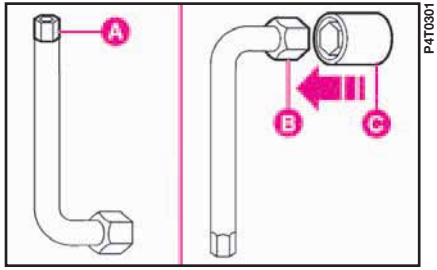


fig. 49

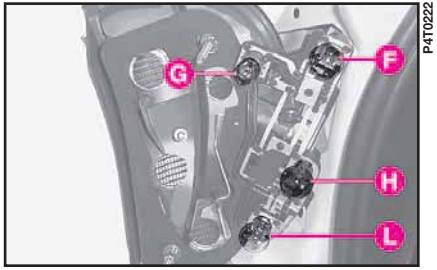


fig. 51

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Motor and engineering enthusiasts as well as those "in the trade" will probably start reading from this point in the handbook. This, in fact, is where a section jam-packed with facts, figures, formulae, measurements and tables begins. In a sense, it is the Lybra's identity card. A document that introduces the car and explains in technical jargon all the features that go together to make it a model designed to give you superlative driving satisfaction.

IDENTIFICATION DATA

CHASSIS MARKING (A - fig. 1)

It is printed on the upper right-hand shock absorber attachment.

It can be reached by opening the bonnet and includes the following data:

– Car model

– Chassis number.

fig. 1

ENGINE MARKING

The marking is stamped on the cylinder block and includes the model and the chassis number.

MODEL PLATE

The plate (**fig. 2**) is fastened to the front crossmember in the engine compartment and bears the following identification information (**fig. 3**):

A - Manufacturer's name

B - Homologation number

C - Car model code

D - Chassis number

E - Maximum vehicle weight fully loaded.

F - Maximum vehicle weight fully loaded with trailer.

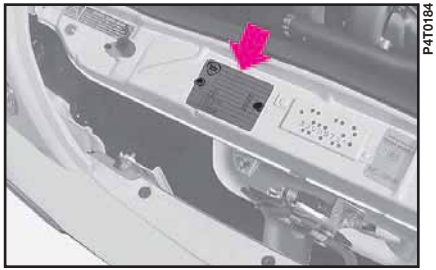


fig. 2

G - Maximum vehicle weight on front axle

H - Maximum vehicle weight on rear axle

I - Engine type

L - Body version code

M - Spare part code

N - Smoke opacity index (for diesel engines).

BODYWORK PAINT IDENTIFICATION PLATE

The plate (**fig. 4**) is applied on the inner boot/tailgate panel.

It bears the following data:

A - Paint manufacturer

B - Colour name

C - Lancia colour code

D - Re-spray and touch up code.

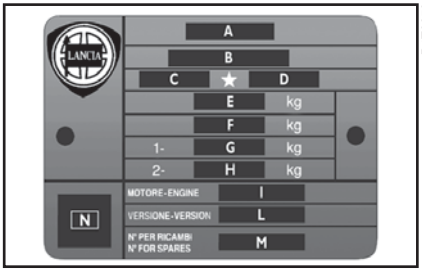


fig. 3

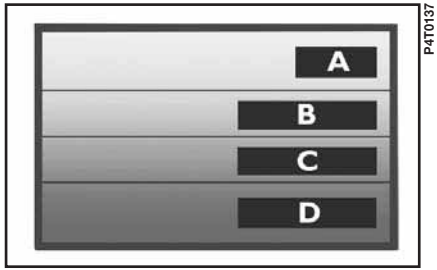


fig. 4

ENGINE CODES - BODYWORK VERSIONS

	Engine code		Bodywork code	
	Saloon	Station Wagon	Saloon	Station Wagon
1.6	182B6000	182B6000	839AXF1A 12C	839BXF1A 13C
1.8	839A7000	839A7000	839AXG1A 14D	839BXG1A 15D
2.0	185A8000	185A8000	839AXH1A 16C	839BXH1A 17C
1.9 jtd	937A2000	937A2000	839AXN1A 22C	839BXN1A 23C
2.4 jtd	841C000	841C000	839AXP1A 24C	839BXP1A 25C

EURO 3 + D4 APPROVAL (for specific markets)

	Engine code	Bodywork code	
		Saloon	Station Wagon
1.8	839A7000	839AXG1A 14E	839BXG1A 15E

ENGINE

				1.6	1.8	2.0
GENERAL FEATURES						
Engine code				182B6000	839A7000	185A8000
Cycle				Otto	Otto	Otto
Number and layout of cylinders				4 in line	4 in line	5 in line
Number of valves per cylinder				4	4	4
Diameter x stroke			mm	20.5 x 78.4	82 x 82.7	82 x 75.65
Total capacity			cm^3	1596	1747	1998
Compression ratio				10.5 : 1	10.3 : 1	10.7 : 1
Maximum power (EEC):			kW	76	96	110
			HP	103	130	150
	corresponding ratio		rpm	5750	6300	6500
Maximum torque (EEC):			Nm	140	156	181
			kgm	14.9	15.8	18.5
	corresponding ratio		rpm	4000	3800	3750
TIMING						
Intake:	opens BTDC			0°	–	–
	opens ATDC			–	3°	9°
	closes BTDC			–	–	–
	closes ABDC			34°	41°	49°
Exhaust:	opens ATDC			–	–	–
	opens BBDC			24°	32°	40°
	opens BTDC			–	–	0°
	closes ATDC			0°	2°	–
Tappet clearance for timing check:		intake	mm	0.45	0.45	0.45
		exhaust	mm	0.45	0.45	0.45
Cold tappet clearance:		intake	mm	Hydraulic tappets	Hydraulic tappets	Hydraulic tappets
		exhaust	mm			

			1.9 jtd	2.4 jtd
GENERAL FEATURES				
Engine code			937A2000	841C000
Cycle			Diesel	Diesel
Number and layout of cylinders			4 in line	5 in line
Number of valves per cylinder			2	2
Diameter x stroke		mm	82 x 90.4	82 x 90.4
Total capacity		cm^3	1910	2387
Compression ratio			18.5 : 1	18.45 : 1
Maximum power (EEC):		kW	85	110
		HP	115	150
corresponding ratio		rpm	4000	4000
Maximum torque (EEC):		Nm	275	305
		kgm	28	31,1
corresponding ratio		rpm	2000	1800
TIMING				
Intake:	opens BTDC		0°	0°
	opens ATDC		–	–
	closes BTDC		–	–
	closes ABDC		32°	32°
Exhaust:	opens ATDC		–	–
	opens BBDC		40°	40°
	closes BTDC		2°	2°
	closes BTDC		–	–
Tappet clearance for timing check:		intake mm	0.50	0.50
		exhaust mm	0.50	0.50
Cold tappet clearance:		intake mm	0.30	0.30
		exhaust mm	0.35	0.35

FUEL FEED/IGNITION

Modifications or repairs to the fuel feed system that are not carried out properly or do not take the system's technical specifications into account can cause malfunctions leading to the risk of fire.

1.6 version

Integrated electronic injection and ignition system. A single control unit governs both function and processes injection time (for fuel metering) and spark advance angle by means of a knock sensor.

– Type: Multipoint, phased, sequential.

– Air cleaner: dry, with paper filter.

– Petrol pump: electrical, submerged in tank.

– Petrol filter in tank.

– Injection pressure: 3 bar.

– Stoichiometric air-to-fuel metering of the basis of electronic processing of the data provided by the engine rpm and absolute pressure in intake manifold sensors.

– "Closed loop" information on consumption for petrol metering provided by the lambda sensor.

– Firing order: 1 - 3 - 4 - 2.

– Spark plugs:
LANCIA RC10YCC
LANCIA BKR5EZ
Champion RC10YCC
NGK BKR5EZ

1.8 version

Integrated electronic injection and ignition system. A single control unit governs both function and processes injection time (for fuel metering) and spark advance angle.

– Type: Multipoint, phased, sequential.

– Air cleaner: dry, with paper filter.

– Petrol pump: electrical, submerged in tank.

– Petrol filter in tank;

– Injection pressure: 3 bar.

– Metering of intake air directly measured by means of a hot film flow meter.

– "Closed loop" information on consumption for petrol metering provided by the lambda sensor.

– Engine idling speed: 825 ± 50 rpm.

– Phase variator on intake camshaft.

– Firing order: 1 - 3 - 4 - 2.

– Spark plugs:
LANCIA RC10YCC
LANCIA BKR6EZ
Champion RC10YCC
NGK BKR6EZ

2.0 versions

Integrated electronic injection and ignition system. A single control unit governs both function and processes injection time (for fuel metering) and spark advance angle.

– Type: Multipoint, phased, sequential.

– Air cleaner: dry, with paper filter.

– Petrol pump: electrical, submerged in tank.

– Petrol filter in tank.

– Injection pressure: 3 bar.

Stoichiometric air-to-fuel metering of the basis of:

– Preventive metering of intake air directly measured by means of a hot film flow meter;

– "Closed loop" information on consumption provided by the lambda sensor.

– Engine idling speed: 700 ± 50 rpm.

– Firing order: 1 - 2 - 4 - 5 - 3.

– Spark plugs:
LANCIA RC8BYC
Champion RC8BYC

FUEL FEED

1.9 jtd - 2.4 jtd versions

Modifications or repairs to the fuel feed system that are not carried out properly or do not take the system's technical specifications into account can cause malfunctions leading to the risk of fire.

Direct high pressure injection system with overboost and intercooler.

Fuel pump: high pressure, unijet; electrical pre-feed pump in tank.

– Firing order:
1.9 jtd: 1 - 3 - 4 - 2
2.4 jtd: 1 - 2 - 4 - 5 - 3.

– Air cleaner: dry, with paper filter.

– Variable geometry turbocharger operated by exhaust gas with waste-gate excess pressure valve.

– Supercharging pressure: 1 bar.

– Electronically controlled cooled EGR system according to engine rpm, load and temperature.

LUBRICATION

Forced lubrication by means of geared pump with built-in pressure limiting valve.

Total capacity cartridge filter for oil purification.

COOLING

Cooling system with radiator, centrifuge pump and expansion reservoir.

"Controlled by-pass" thermostat on secondary circuit for recirculating coolant from the engine to the radiator.

Electrical fan for cooling the radiator controlled by the engine control unit.

TRANSMISSION

CLUTCH

Hydraulically controlled, self-adjusting pedal without idle stroke.

MECHANICAL GEARBOX AND DIFFERENTIAL

Five gears forward and reserve with synchromesh for forward gear engagement.

Reverse with synchromesh (1.9 jtd and 2.4 jtd versions).

The gearbox ratios are:

Saloon	1.6	1.8	2.0	1.9 jtd	2.4 jtd
1st gear	3.909	3.909	3.909	3.800	3.800
2nd gear	2.238	2.238	2.238	2.235	2.235
3rd gear	1.520	1.520	1.520	1.360	1.360
4th gear	1.156	1.156	1.156	0.971	0.971
5th gear	0.971	0.971	0.946	0.707	0.763
reverse	3.909	3.909	3.909	3.545	3.545

Station Wagon	1.6	1.8	2.0	1.9 jtd	2.4 jtd
1st gear	3.909	3.909	3.909	3.800	3.800
2nd gear	2.238	2.238	2.238	2.235	2.235
3rd gear	1.520	1.520	1.520	1.360	1.360
4th gear	1.156	1.156	1.156	0.971	0.971
5th gear	0.971	0.971	0.946	0.707	0.763
reverse	3.909	3.909	3.909	3.545	3.545

DIFFERENTIAL

Final drive gear and differential assembly built into the gearbox.

Drive transmission to the front wheels by means of drive shafts connected to the differential and to the wheels with CV joints.

The differential ratios are:

	Final reduction differential torque	Number of teeth
1.6	3,823	65/17
1.8	3,733	56/15
2.0	3,733	56/15
1.9 jtd	3,353	57/17
2.4 jtd	3,111	56/18

BRAKES

SERVICE AND EMERGENCY BRAKES

Front: disc brakes with floating shoes and one cylinder per wheel.

Rear: disc brakes with floating shoe

Crossed hydraulic circuit control.

8" vacuum brake booster with additional chamber (1.6 - 1.8 and 1.9 jtd versions). 7" + 8" double tandem vacuum brake booster (2.0 and 2.4 jtd versions).

Four sensor, four channel ABS.

Automatic take-up of friction liner wear.

Brake force distributor governed by the ABS system.

HANDBRAKE

Controlled by a lever, it works mechanically on the rear brakes.

SUSPENSIONS

FRONT

Independent wheel, McPherson with transverse lower wishbones.

Offset coil springs and dual effect telescopic shock absorbers.

Anti-roll bar.

REAR

Independent wheel, BLG (guided wishbone) multiple wishbone layout.

Coil springs.

Dual effect, telescopic, pressurised gas shock absorbers and stabiliser.

STEERING

Telescopic, energy absorbing jointed steering column with angular adjustment system.

Permanently lubricated rack and pinion.

Hydraulic power steering.

Permanently lubricated joints.

Minimum steering circle:

– 1.6 - 1.8 - 1.9 jtd versions = 10.5 m

– 2.0 - 2.4 jtd versions = 10.9 m.

Number of steering wheel turns lock-to-lock: approximately 2.5.

WHEEL GEOMETRY

Toe-in measured from rim to rim:

– front wheels: –1 ± 1 mm.

– rear wheels: 2 ± 2 mm.

The values refer to the car in running order.

This operation requires the use of special equipment and must therefore be carried out at a **Lancia Dealership**.

WHEELS

RIMS AND TYRES

Printed steel or alloy rims (where fitted).

Tubeless tyres with radial carcass.

The homologated tyres are listed in the log book.

IMPORTANT In the event of discrepancies between information given in the Owner Handbook and that shown in the Log Book, refer to the latter only.

To ensure safety of the car in movement, it must be fitted with tyres of specified size and of the same make and type on all wheels.

IMPORTANT Do not use inner tubes with tubeless tyres. **SPACE-SAVER SPARE WHEEL**

Printed steel rim.

Tubeless tyre.

	Rim	Tyre
1.6 - 1.9 jtd	6J x 15H2	195/65 R15 91H
	6½J x 15H2 - 37 (v) 6J x 15H2 - 37 (■)	205/60 R15 91V (■)
1.8	6J x 15H2	195/65 R15 91V
	6½J x 15H2 - 37 (v) 6J x 15H2 - 37 (■)	205/60 R15 91V (■)
2.0 - 2.4 jtd	6J x 15H2	195/65 R15 91V
	6½J x 15H2 - 37 (v) 6J x 15H2 - 37 (■)	205/60 R15 91V (■)
	6½J x 16H2 - 37	205/55 R16 91V

(v) For some versions (■) Optional

Rim	Tyre
4.00B x 15" H35	T125/80 R15 96M

SNOW TYRES

	Rim	Tyre
1.6 - 1.9 jtd	6J x 15H2	195/65 R15 91T (M + S)
1.8 - 2.0 - 2.4 jtd	6J x 15H2	195/65 R15 91H (M + S)

SNOW CHAINS

Use only low profile chains with maximum height off the tyre of 9 mm.

Check the tautness of the chains after driving some ten metres.

CORRECT TYRE READING

Below, please find the instructions needed to understand the meaning of the code stamped on the tyre.

The code may be in one of the ways given in the example.

Example:

205/55 R 16 91 V

205 = Nominal width (distance in mm between sides).

55 = Percentage height/width ratio.

R = Radial tyre.

ZR = Radial tyre, with speed over 240 km/h.

16 = Rim diameter in inches.

91 = Load index (capacity), e.g. **91** = 615 kg. Not present in ZR tyres.

W, Z = Maximum speed index. In ZR tyres the speed index Z is before the R.

Load index (capacity)

60 = 250 kg
61 = 257 kg
62 = 265 kg
63 = 272 kg
64 = 280 kg
65 = 290 kg
66 = 300 kg
67 = 307 kg
68 = 315 kg
69 = 325 kg
70 = 335 kg
71 = 345 kg
72 = 355 kg
73 = 365 kg
74 = 375 kg
75 = 387 kg
76 = 400 kg
77 = 412 kg
78 = 425 kg
79 = 437 kg
80 = 450 kg
81 = 462 kg
82 = 475 kg
83 = 487 kg
84 = 500 kg
85 = 515 kg
86 = 530 kg
87 = 545 kg
88 = 560 kg
89 = 580 kg
90 = 600 kg
91 = 615 kg
92 = 630 kg
93 = 650 kg
94 = 670 kg
95 = 690 kg
96 = 710 kg
97 = 730 kg
98 = 750 kg
99 = 775 kg
100 = 800 kg
101 = 825 kg
102 = 850 kg
103 = 875 kg
104 = 900 kg
105 = 925 kg
106 = 950 kg

Maximum speed index

Q = up to 160 km/h.
R = up to 170 km/h
S = up to 180 km/h.
T = up to 190 km/h.
U = up to 200 km/h.
H = up to 210 km/h.
V = over 210 km/h.
ZR = over 240 km/h.
W = up to 270 km/h.
Y = up to 300 km/h.

Maximum speed index for snow tyres

Q M + S = up to 160 km/h.
T M + S = up to 190 km/h.
H M + S = up to 210 km/h.

UNDERSTANDING RIM MARKING (fig. 5)

The following are the necessary indications to understand the meaning of the markings on the rim.

Example:

6 1/2 J x 15 H2

6 1/2 = rim width in inches (**1**).

J = rim drop centre outline (side projection where the tyre bead rests (**2**).

15 = rim nominal diameter in inches (corresponds to diameter of the tyre to be mounted (**3** = ∅).

H2 = "hump" shape and number (relief on the circumference holding the tubeless tyre ead on te rim).

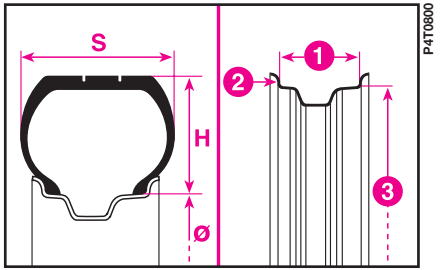


fig. 5

ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

Modifications or repairs to the system that are not carried out properly or do not take the system's technical specifications into account can cause malfunctions leading to the risk of fire.

Voltage: 12 Volts.

BATTERY

Earthed negative.
Batteries with higher electrical specifications are fitted in specific markets.

	20 hour discharge capacity	Cold cranking discarge current (–18°C)
1.6	50Ah - 60Ah (*)	250A - 380A (*)
1.8 - 2.0	50Ah - 60Ah (*)	250A - 380A (*)
1.9 jtd	60Ah - 70Ah (*)	380A - 450A (*)
2.4 jtd	70Ah	450A

(*) Alternative for versions/markets where applicable

ALTERNATOR

Diode rectifier with built-in electronic voltage regulator. The battery starts recharging as soon as the engine starts

	Maximum nominal output current
1.6	80A - (80A or 90A with air conditioner) (105A alternative for versions/markets where applicable)
1.8 - 2.0	100A - (100A with air conditioner) (120A alternative for versions/markets where applicable)
1.9 jtd	85A or 100A (100A or 120A with air conditioner) (120A with supplementary heater)
2.4 jtd	120A

STARTER MOTOR

	Output power
1.6	1.3 kW or 1.4 kW
1.8 - 2.0	1.1 kW
1.9 jtd	1.8 kW or 2.0 kW
2.4 jtd	2.1 kW

DIMENSIONS

Height is intended for an unladen car. Dimensions in mm.

Boot volume (as per VDA standards): 420 dm^3

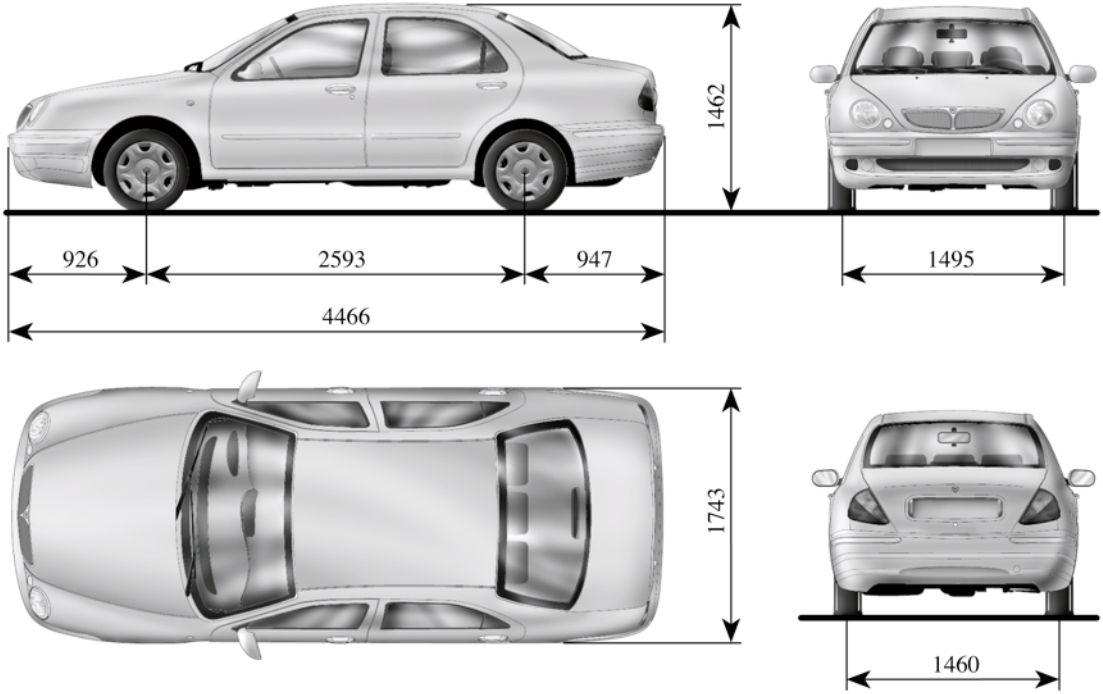


fig. 6

Height is intended for an unladen car. Dimensions in mm.

Boot volume under luggage cover (as per VDA standards):

– normal conditions: 420 dm^3
– extended: 800 dm^3

Overall volume: 1,300 dm^3

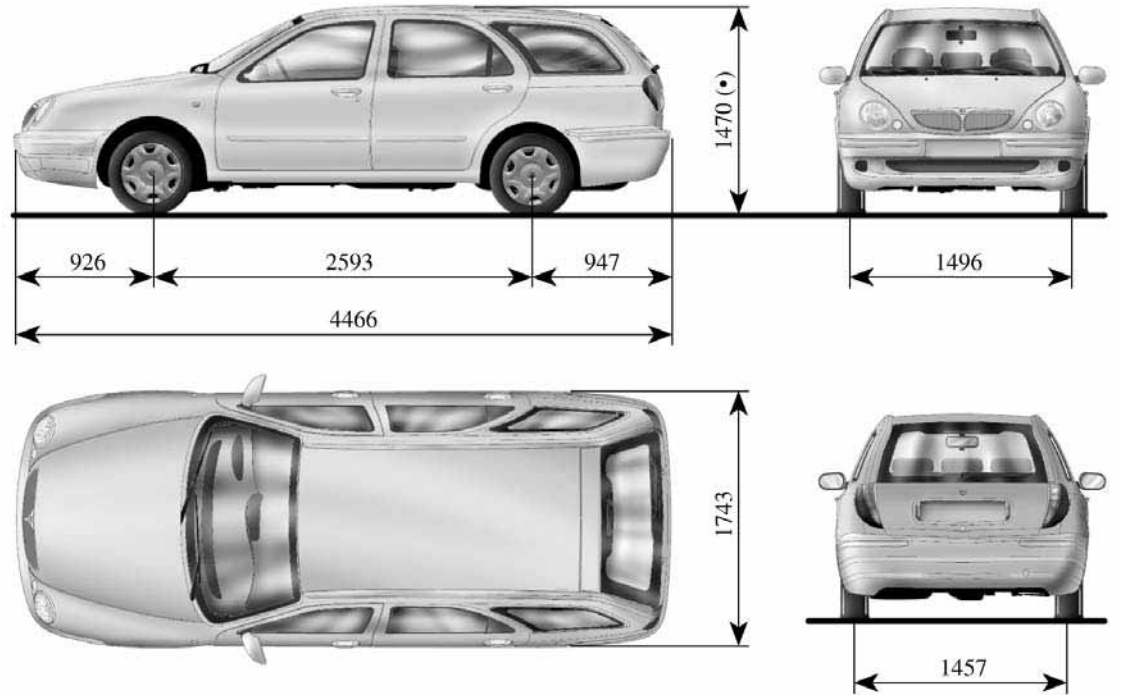


fig. 7 (•) Height including roof bars: 1578 mm

PERFORMANCE

Top admitted speed after running-in (in km/h)

Saloon	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th	R
1.6	48	84	123	161	185	48
1.8	54	94	137	180	201	54
2.0	55	96	141	186	210	35
1.9 jtd	36	62	102	143	190	39
2.4 jtd	39	65	108	151	214	41

Station Wagon	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th	R
1.6	48	84	123	161	185	48
1.8	54	94	137	180	201	54
2.0	55	96	141	186	210	55
1.9 jtd	36	62	102	143	190	39
2.4 jtd	39	65	108	151	214	41

WEIGHTS (kg)

	1.6 Saloon	1.6 Station Wagon	1.8 Saloon	1.8 Station Wagon	2.0 Saloon	2.0 Station Wagon
Kerb weight (including fuel, spare wheel, tools and accessories):	1,250	1,290	1,300	1,340	1,350	1,390
Payload (*) including driver:	520	525	520	525	520	525
Maximum admitted loads (**)						
– front axle:	1,050	1,050	1,050	1,050	1,050	1,050
– rear axle:	1,050	1,050	1,050	1,050	1,050	1,050
– total:	1,770	1,815	1,820	1,865	1,870	1,915
Towable loads: – trailer with brakes	1,200	1,200	1,400	1,400	1,400	1,400
– trailer without brakes	400	400	400	400	400	400
Maximum load on roof:	50	80	50	80	50	80
Maximum load on tow hitch (trailer with brakes):	75	75	75	75	75	75

(*) If special equipment is fitted (sunroof, tow hitch, etc,), the unladen car weight increases, thus reducing the specified payload.

(**) Loads not to be exceeded. The driver is responsible for arranging the loads so that they comply with these limits.

	1.9 jtd Saloon	1.9 jtd Station Wagon	2.4 jtd Saloon	2.4 jtd Station Wagon
Kerb weight (including fuel, spare wheel, tools and accessories):	1,310	1,350	1,370	1,410
Payload (*) including driver:	520	525	520	525
Maximum admitted loads				
– front axle:	1,050	1,050	1,050	1,050
– rear axle:	1,050	1,050	1,050	1,050
– total:	1,830	1,875	1,890	1,935
Towable loads: – trailer with brakes	1,400	1,400	1,400	1,400
– trailer without brakes	400	400	400	400
Maximum load on roof:	50	80	50	80
Maximum load on tow hitch (trailer with brakes):	75	75	75	75

(*) If special equipment is fitted (sunroof, tow hitch, etc.), the unladen car weight increases, thus reducing the specified payload.

(**) Loads not to be exceeded. The driver is responsible for arranging the loads so that they comply with these limits.

CAPACITIES

	1.6		1.8		2.0		Prescribed fuel Recommended products
	litres	kg	litres	kg	litres	kg	
Fuel tank: including a reserve of:	60 8	– –	60 8	– –	60 8	– –	Premium unleaded petrol with a RON not lower than 95
Engine cooling system:	8.0	–	6.80	–	8.6	–	Mixture of distilled water and **PARAFLU UP** at 50%.
Engine sump: Engine sump and filter:	3.5 3.8	3.1 3.4	3.9 4.3	3.5 3.85	4.3 5.0	3.8 4.45	**SELENIA 20K** (❒)
Gearbox/differential:	1.98	1.8	1.98	1.8	1.98	1.8	**TUTELA CAR MATRYX**
Hydraulic power steering:	0.9	–	0.9	–	0.9	–	**TUTELA GI/A**
CV cavities and joints (each):	–	0.095	–	0.095	–	0.095	**TUTELA MRM 2**
Hydraulic brake circuit with ABS:	0.52	–	0.56	–	0.56	–	**TUTELA TOP 4**
Windscreen/rear window washer reservoir (SW):	4	–	4	–	4	–	**TUTELA PROFESSIONAL SC 35**
Windscreen/rear window/ headlight washer reservoir (SW)	5.5	–	5.5	–	5.5	–	**TUTELA PROFESSIONAL SC 35**

(❒) For temperatures lower than –20°C, we recommend **SELENIA PERFORMER** SAE 5W-30.

	1.9 jtd		2.4 jtd		Prescribed fuel Recommended products
	litres	kg	litres	kg	
Fuel tank: including a reserve of:	60 8	– –	60 8	– –	Diesel fuel for motor vehicles (EN590 specifications)
Engine cooling system:	7.27	–	7.4	–	Mixture of distilled water and **PARAFLU UP** at 50%.
Engine sump: Engine sump and filter:	4.2 4.8	3.75 4.25	4.8 5.5	4.3 4.9	**SELENIA TURBO DIESEL** (❍)
Gearbox/differential:	1.98	1.8	1.98	1.8	**TUTELA CAR MATRYX**
Hydraulic power steering:	0.9	–	0.9	–	**TUTELA GI/A**
CV cavities and joints (each):	–	0.095	–	0.095	**TUTELA MRM 2**
Hydraulic brake circuit with ABS:	0.56	–	0.56	–	**TUTELA TOP 4**
Windscreen/rear window washer reservoir (SW):	4	–	4	–	**TUTELA PROFESSIONAL** **SC 35**
Windscreen/rear window/ headlight washer reservoir (SW):	5.5	–	5.5	–	**TUTELA PROFESSIONAL** **SC 35**

(❍) For temperatures lower than –15°C, we recommend **SELENIA WR DIESEL** SAE 5W-40.

NOTES ON FLUID USE

Oil

Do not add oil with different specifications from the oil already in the engine.

Engine coolant

A 50-50 mixture of **PARAFLU UP** and distilled water gives freeze protection to -35°C.

Windscreen washer fluid

Use a mixture of water and **TUTELA PROFESSIONAL SC 35** fluid in the following concentrations:

30% of **TUTELA PROFESSIONAL SC 35** and 70% of water in summer.

50% of **TUTELA PROFESSIONAL SC 35** and 50% of water in winter.

If the temperature falls below –20°C, use **TUTELA PROFESSIONAL SC 35** undiluted.

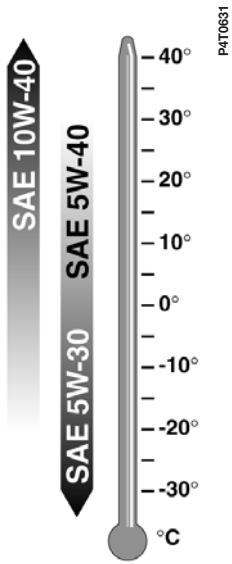
ENGINE OIL CONSUMPTION

During the beginning of the car's life the engine is be tuned in. Engine oil consumption can only be considered stabilised after the first 5,000 - 6,000 km.

IMPORTANT Oil consumption depends on the driving style and the conditions of use.

FLUIDS AND LUBRICANTS

PRODUCTS WHICH MAY BE USED AND THEIR SPECIFICATIONS

Use	Fluid and lubricant specifications for correct vehicle operation	Recommended fluids and lubricants	Applications
Lubricants for petrol engines (❒)	SAE 10W40 synthetic-based multigrade oil exceeding ACEA A3 - 96, CCMC G5 and API SJ specifications	**SELENIA 20K**	
	SAE 5W-30 synthetic-based multigrade oil exceeding ACEA A1 and API SJ specifications	**SELENIA PERFORMER MULTIPOWER**	
Lubricants for diesel engines	SAE 5W-40 synthetic-based multigrade oil exceeding ACEA B3and API CF specifications	**SELENIA WR DIESEL**	

(❒) For temperatures lower than –20°C, we recommend **SELENIA PERFORMER MULTIPOWER** SAE 5W-30.

Use	Fluid and lubricant specifications for correct vehicle operation	Recommended fluids and lubricants	Applications
Drive lubricants and greas	SAE 75W85 synthetic-based lubricant exceeding API GL-4, MIL-L-2105 D specifications	**TUTELA CAR MATRYX**	Mechanical gearbox and differential
	Molybdenum disulphide, lithium soap based grease, water resistant, NLGI = 2 consistency	**TUTELA MRM 2**	CV joints
Brake fluid	Synthetic fluid, NTHSA no. 116 DOT 4, ISO 4925, SAE J-1703, CUNA NC 956-01	**TUTELA TOP 4**	Hydraulic brake and clutch controls
Radiator antifreeze	Protective, red colour, with antifreeze action, ethylene glycol and organic inhibitor based	**PARAFLU UP** (●)	Proportions: 50% water and 50% **PARAFLU UP**
Diesel fuel additive	Diesel fuel additive providing engine protection	**DIESEL MIX**	To be mixed with diesel fuel (25 cc for 10 l)
Windscreen/rear window/headlight washer fluid	Mixture of alcohol and surfactants CUNA NC 956-II	**TUTELA PROFESSIONAL SC 35**	To be used diluted or undiluted

(●) **IMPORTANT** Do not top up or mix with other fluids with specifications different from the prescribed ones.

FUEL CONSUMPTION

The fuel consumption values shown in the following table were defined according to the type-approval specifications in European Directives.

Consumption values are defined by means of the following procedures:

– **an urban cycle**: consisting of a cold start and a simulated drive in city streets;

– **an extra-urban cycle**: consisting in frequent accelerations, in all gears, simulating normal conditions of use. Speed ranges from 0 to 120 km/h;

– **combined consumption** consisting of 37% urban cycle and 63% extra-urban cycle.

IMPORTANT Road and traffic conditions, weather, general conditions of the vehicle, driving style, fittings and accessories, use of the climate control system, load, roof racks and other situations penalising aerodynamic penetration and effecting rolling resistance will influence fuel consumption rates which can be different from the values shown in the table (see "Cheap running that respects the environment" in "Driving your car" chapter).

CONSUMPTION ACCORDING TO DIRECTIVE 1999/100/EC (liter x 100 km)

	Urban		Extra-urban		Average combined	
	Saloon	Station Wagon	Saloon	Station Wagon	Saloon	Station Wagon
1.6	11.2	11.4	6.4	6.5	8.2	8.3
1.8	11.8	12.4	6.3	6.5	8.3	8.7
2.0	13.8	14.0	7.5	7.7	9.8	10.0
1.9 jtd	8.1	8.4	4.7	4.8	5.9	6.1
2.4 jtd	8.9	9.1	5.3	5.4	6.6	6.8

CO_2 EMISSION IN EXHAUST

The CO_2 emission in exhaust shown in the following tables refers to the combined consumption.

CO_2 EMISSIONS AS PER DIRECTIVE 1999/100/EC (g/km)

1.6		1.8		2.0		1.9 jtd		2.4 jtd	
Saloon	Station Wagon	Saloon	Station Wagon	Saloon	Station Wagon	Saloon	Station Wagon	Saloon	Station Wagon
194	197	198	206	233	238	157	162	176	179

TYRE INFLATION PRESSURE

COLD TYRE INFLATION PRESSURE (bar)

Saloon	Type	Average load		Full load		Space-saver spare wheel
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear	
1.6	195/65 R15 91H	2.0	2.0	2.2	2.4	4.2
	205/60 R15 91V (■)	2.0	2.0	2.2	2.4	4.2
1.8	195/65 R15 91V	2.0	2.0	2.2	2.4	4.2
	205/60 R15 91V (■)	2.0	2.0	2.2	2.4	4.2
2.0	195/65 R15 91V	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4	4.2
	205/60 R15 91V (■)	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4	4.2
	205/55 R16 91V	2.3	2.3	2.5	2.5	4.2
1.9 jtd	195/65 R15 91H	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4	4.2
	205/60 R15 91V (■)	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4	4.2
2.4 jtd	195/65 R15 91V	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4	4.2
	205/60 R15 91V (■)	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4	4.2
	205/55 R16 91V	2.3	2.3	2.5	2.5	4.2

(■) Optional

0.3 bar should be added to the values given if the pressure is measured while the tyre is hot.

Station Wagon	Tyre	Average load		Full load		Space-saver spare wheel
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear	
1.6	195/65 R15 91H	2.0	2.0	2.2	2.4 (2.7*)	4.2
	205/60 R15 91V (■)	2.0	2.0	2.2	2.4 (2.7*)	4.2
1.8	195/65 R15 91V	2.0	2.0	2.2	2.4 (2.7*)	4.2
	205/60 R15 91V (■)	2.0	2.0	2.2	2.4 (2.7*)	4.2
2.0	195/65 R15 91V	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4 (2.7*)	4.2
	205/60 R15 91V (■)	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4 (2.7*)	4.2
	205/55 R16 91V	2.3	2.3	2.5	2.5 (2.8*)	4.2
1.9 jtd	195/65 R15 91H	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4 (2.7*)	4.2
	205/60 R15 91V (■)	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4 (2.7*)	4.2
2.4 jtd	195/65 R15 91V	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4 (2.7*)	4.2
	205/60 R15 91V (■)	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4 (2.7*)	4.2
	205/55 R16 91V	2.3	2.3	2.5	2.5 (2.8*)	4.2

(■) Optional

0.3 bar should be added to the values given if the pressure is measured while the tyre is hot.

(*) Maximum load in boot with seats folded + 1 person + 350 kg.

ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

Genuine LANCIA accessories have been designed with the Lybra specifically in mind and have been selected and tested on the car. They are easy to use, reliable and practical, qualities that lead to enhanced comfort and safety under all driving conditions.

If you wish to give your Lybra a sportier look, LANCIA has designed light alloy rims, leather panels, spoilers and sporty bumpers that are fully in keeping with the car's line making it more personal and aggressive.

To ensure child safety, the child safety seats offered by Lineaccessori LANCIA meet the requirements of the European standards currently in force.

You can find the LANCIA accessories described in a catalogue available from Lancia Dealerships. Just ask the staff to give you all the details.

The following pages show diagrams and give instructions for correctly fitting a number of accessories. Installation must always be entrusted to the experts.

LANCIA has specially trained its Dealership staff for work on the Lybra.

TOW HITCH

TOW HITCH INSTALLATION

The tow hitch must be fixed to the body by an expert in accordance with the following instructions and respecting the additional and/or integrative information provided by the tow hitch manufacturer.

The tow hitch to be fitted must comply with the current regulations in force, with reference to Directive 94/20/EEC and subsequent modifications.

Use a tow hitch suited for the maximum towable load of the car version on which the tow hitch is to be fitted.

Use a unified coupling for the electrical connections. The coupling is generally fitted on a specific mount fastened to the tow hitch.

For the electric connection, a 7 or 13 pole 12VDC coupling must be used (CUNA/UNI and ISO/DIN standards). Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the car and/or the tow hitch.

The electrical brake (where relevant) or other device (electrical winch, etc.) must be powered directly from the battery by means of a lead with a cross-section area no smaller than 2.5 mm^2.

In addition to the electrical connections, only the power wire for an additional electrical brake and for internal trailer lighting with a power not exceeding 15W can be connected to the car's electrical system.

INSTALLATION DIAGRAM

Fasten the tow hitch (**fig. 1**) in the points marked with a ✣ symbol using a total of:

– six M8x30 screws
(of which five hexagonal head screws and one countersunk Allen screw)

– three M12x35 screws

– two M8x30 screws
(existing on the car)

– two M10x110 screws
(countersunk Allen screw).

Reinforcement plate **1** must be at least 8 mm thick. Reinforcement plates **2** and **3** must be at least 6 mm thick.

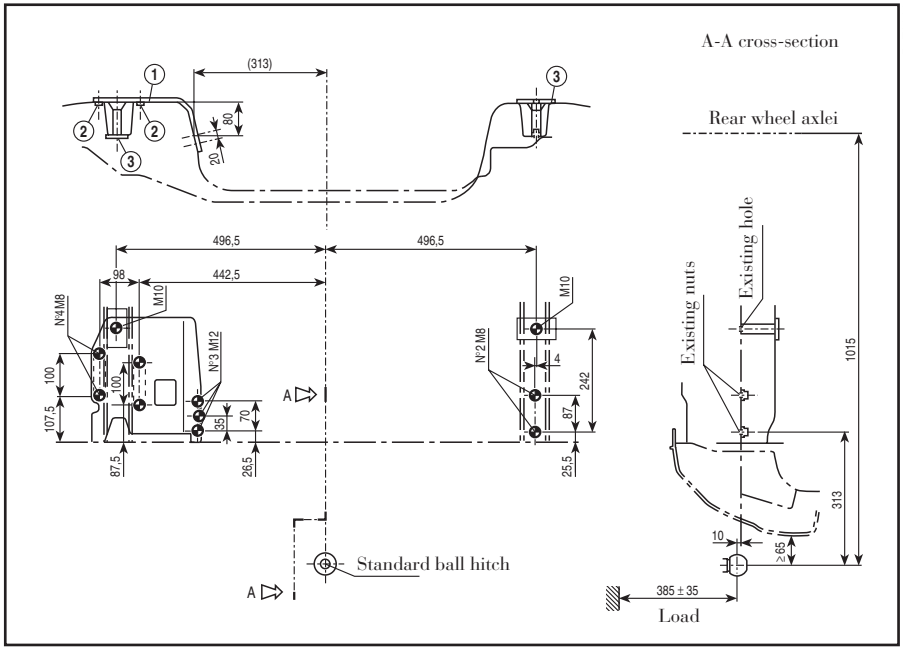


fig. 1

IMPORTANT Fasten a tag in a clearly visible position at the same height as the tow hitch. This tag is compulsory. It must be adequately sized, made of suitable material and carry the following information:

MAX LOAD
ON BALL COUPLING 75 kg

After assembly, seal the holes to prevent exhaust fumes from entering the passenger compartment.

INDEX

RADIO-FREQUENCY REMOTE CONTROL: ministerial homologation

International motoring code	Country	Homologation number
A	Austria	
B	Belgium	
CH	Switzerland	
D	Germany	
DK	Denmark	
E	Spain	
F	France	
GR	Greece	
H	Hungary	
I	Italy	
L	Luxembourg	
NL	Netherlands	
P	Portugal	
BG	Bulgaria	P-14-540/2001
CRO	Croatia	SRD 162/01
CZ	Czech Republic	CCZ
JOR	Jordan	TRC/LPD/2001/01
KWT	Kuwait	-
OM	Oman	OMA/1150/075/01
PL	Poland	211/2001
Q	Qatar	QTEL/DR/2001/R-215
RL	Lebanon	6731/OM
RO	Romania	ATR Nr 67
SLO	Slovenia	C231-0989/01
SK	Sloval Republic	R287 2001 N
SX	Saudi Arabia	-
UAE	United Arab Emirates	5/10-2/2309/3806

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

CE 0523 (!)

This declaration is the responsibility of the manufacturer / authorised representative within the Community :

SIEMENS AUTOMOTIVE S.A.
Avenue du Mirail B.P. 1149 31036 TOULOUSE Cedex 1 FRANCE
(Name / Address)

This certifies that the following designated product

L839MY01
(Product identification)

complies with the essential protection requirements of R&TTE Directive 1999/5/ EC on the approximation of the laws of the Member States relating to ***Radio Spectrum Matters, EMC*** and ***Electrical Safety***.
This declaration applies to all specimens manufactured in accordance with the technical documentation described in the annex II. SIEMENS AUTOMOTIVE S.A. keep this documentation at the proposal of the relevant national authorities of any Member State for inspection purpose.
Assessment of compliance of the product with the requirements relating to the essential requirements acc. to Article 3 R&TTE was based on Annex IV of the Directive 1999/5/ EC and the following standards:

Radio Spectrum : EN 300 220-1
(Identification of regulations / standards)

EMC : EN 301 489 Part 1 & 3
(Identification of regulations / standards)

Safety : EN 60950
(Identification of regulations / standards)

(!) The Transmitter **L839MY01** is a 433.92 MHz radio equipment not submitted to harmonised standards. This device is licence exempt and distributed in the European countries which will apply the R&TTE directive : Austria, Belgium, Denmark, Estonia, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Iceland, Ireland, Italy, Luxembourg, Netherlands, Norway, Portugal, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland and UK.

Toulouse (Place, date) PHILIPPE LEFAURE 21 JUIN 2001 (Signature)

(Name in block letters)

Siemens Automotive SA

B.P. 1149
Avenue du Mirail
31036 Toulouse Cedex 1
France

Tel : 05 61 19 88 88
Tel : + 33 5 61 19 88 88
Telecopie : 05 61 19 25 25
Fax : + 33 5 61 19 25 25

Société Anonyme au capital de 85 750 000 EUR
314 722 026 RCS Toulouse - SIRET 314 722 026 00031
FR 03314722026

SELÈNIA®

At the heart of your engine.

Always ask your mechanic for SELÈNIA®

Oil change? The experts reccomend Selenia.

The engine of your car is factory filled with Selenia, a range of lubricants which satisfies the most advanced international specificationss. Specific tests and high technical characteristicss allow the Selenia range to guarantee the optimum and top quality performance of your engine.

The Selenia range includes a number of of technologically advanced products:

SELENIA 20K
API SL lubricant ,which guarantees optimum performance and maximum wear protection to aspirated, turbocharged or multivalve petrol engines.

SELENIA PERFORMER
Is particularly ideal for the protection of new generation petrol engines,
Very effective even in the most severe weather conditions. It guaranteees a reduction in fuel consumption (Energy conserving).

SELENIA TD
Oil for aspirated turbocharged or multivalve diesel engines, guarantees maximum engine cleanliness and stability at high temperatures.

SELENIA WR
Oil which has been specifically designed for use in common rail andMultijet diesel engines. Effective during cold starts it offers maximim wear protection, hydraulic tappets control, consumption reduction and stability at high temperatures.

The complete Selenia range also includes Selenia 20K Alfa Romeo, Selenia Performer 5W-40, Selenia Racing and Selenia Digitech.

For further information on Selenia products, please visit the website **www.flselenia.com**.

NOTES

COLD TYRE INFLATION PRESSURE (bar)

	Tyre	Saloon				Station Wagon				Space-saver spare wheel
		Average load		Full load		Average load		Full load		
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear	Front	Rear	Front	Rear	
1.6	195/65 R15 91H	2.0	2.0	2.2	2.4	2.0	2.0	2.2	2.4 (2.7*)	4.2
	205/60 R15 91V	2.0	2.0	2.2	2.4	2.0	2.0	2.2	2.4 (2.7*)	4.2
1.8	195/65 R15 91V	2.0	2.0	2.2	2.4	2.0	2.0	2.2	2.4 (2.7*)	4.2
	205/60 R15 91V	2.0	2.0	2.2	2.4	2.0	2.0	2.2	2.4 (2.7*)	4.2
1.9 jtd	195/65 R15 91H	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4 (2.7*)	4.2
	205/60 R15 91V	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4 (2.7*)	4.2
2.0 - 2.4 jtd	195/65 R15 91V	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4 (2.7*)	4.2
	205/60 R15 91V	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.4 (2.7*)	4.2
	205/55 R16 91V	2.3	2.3	2.5	2.5	2.3	2.3	2.5	2.5 (2.8*)	4.2

0.3 bar should be added to the values given if the pressure is measured while the tyre is hot.
(*) Maximum load in boot with seats folded + 1 person + 350 kg.

ENGINE OIL CHANGE

	1.6		1.8		2.0		1.9 jtd		2.4 jtd	
	litres	kg	litres	kg	litres	kg	litres	kg	litres	kg
Engine sump	3.5	3.1	3.9	3.5	4.3	3.8	4.2	3.75	4.8	4.3
Engine sump and filter	3.8	3.4	4.3	3.85	5.0	4.45	4.8	4.25	5.5	4.9

Dispose of waste oil properly.

FUEL CAPACITIES (litres)

	1.6	1.8	2.0	1.9 jtd	2.4 jtd
Tank capacity	60	60	60	60	60
Reserve	8	8	8	8	8

Refuel petrol engines with unleaded petrol with an octane rating (RON) no lower than 95 only.
Refuel diesel engines with diesel fuel for motor vehicles (EN590 specifications) only.

Fiat Auto S.p.A. - After Sales - Assistenza Tecnica - Ingegneria Assistenziale
Largo Senatore G. Agnelli, 5 - 10040 Volvera – Torino (Italia)
Print n. 603.45.726 - X/2004 - 4th Edition - Printed by Satiz - Turin (Italy)
Coordinamento Editoriale Satiz - Torino

ENGLISH